

**PCT**WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION  
International Bureau

## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<b>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup>:</b> <b>A61K 31/395, 38/00</b>	<b>A1</b>	<b>(11) International Publication Number:</b> <b>WO 96/32105</b> <b>(43) International Publication Date:</b> 17 October 1996 (17.10.96)
<b>(21) International Application Number:</b> PCT/US96/05072 <b>(22) International Filing Date:</b> 12 April 1996 (12.04.96) <b>(30) Priority Data:</b> 08/421,583 12 April 1995 (12.04.95) US <b>(60) Parent Application or Grant</b> <b>(63) Related by Continuation</b> US 08/421,583 (CON) Filed on 12 April 1995 (12.04.95) <b>(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):</b> PRESIDENT AND FELLOWS OF HARVARD COLLEGE [US/US]; 17 Quincy Street, Cambridge, MA 02138 (US). <b>(72) Inventors; and</b> <b>(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only):</b> SCHREIBER, Stuart, L. [US/US]; 424 Marlborough Street, Boston, MA 02115 (US). STANDAERT, Robert, F. [US/US]; Apartment #901, 1000 University Drive East, College Station, TX 77840 (US). FENTEANY, Gabriel [US/US]; 201 B Holden Green, Cambridge, MA 02138 (US). JAMISON, Timothy, F. [US/US]; Apartment #1, 64 Front Street, Cambridge, MA 02140 (US).	<b>(74) Agents:</b> FREEMAN, John, W. et al.; Fish & Richardson, P.C., 225 Franklin Street, Boston, MA 02110-2804 (US). <b>(81) Designated States:</b> AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, HU, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, ARIPO patent (KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG). <b>Published</b> <i>With international search report.</i> <i>Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i>	
<b>(54) Title:</b> LACTACYSTIN ANALOGS <b>(57) Abstract</b>  Compounds related to lactacystin and lactacystin $\beta$ -lactone, pharmaceutical compositions containing the compounds, and methods of use.		

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AM	Armenia	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
AT	Austria	GE	Georgia	MX	Mexico
AU	Australia	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BB	Barbados	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BE	Belgium	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BF	Burkina Faso	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BR	Brazil	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
BY	Belarus	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CA	Canada	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CF	Central African Republic	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CG	Congo	KZ	Kazakhstan	SG	Singapore
CH	Switzerland	LI	Liechtenstein	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LK	Sri Lanka	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LR	Liberia	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LT	Lithuania	SZ	Swaziland
CS	Czechoslovakia	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CZ	Czech Republic	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
DE	Germany	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DK	Denmark	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
EE	Estonia	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	UG	Uganda
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	US	United States of America
FR	France	MR	Mauritania	UZ	Uzbekistan
GA	Gabon			VN	Viet Nam

- 1 -

00246/197W01

LACTACYSTIN ANALOGSBACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

5           The invention relates generally to lactacystin and analogues thereof.

          Eukaryotic cells contain multiple proteolytic systems, including lysosomal proteases, calpains, ATP-ubiquitin-proteasome dependent pathway, and an ATP-  
10 independent nonlysosomal process. The major neutral proteolytic activity in the cytosol and nucleus is the proteasome, a 20S (700 kDa) particle with multiple peptidase activities. The 20S complex is the proteolytic core of a 26S (1500 kDa) complex that degrades or  
15 processes ubiquitin-conjugated proteins. Ubiquitination marks a protein for hydrolysis by the 26S proteasome complex. Many abnormal or short-lived normal polypeptides are degraded by the ubiquitin-proteasome-dependent pathway. Abnormal peptides include oxidant-  
20 damaged proteins (e.g., those having oxidized disulfide bonds), products of premature translational termination (e.g., those having exposed hydrophobic groups which are recognized by the proteasome), and stress-induced denatured or damaged proteins (where stress is induced  
25 by, e.g., changes in pH or temperature, or exposure to metals). In addition, some proteins, such as casein, do not required ubiquitination to be hydrolyzed by the proteasome.

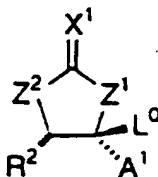
          The proteasome has chymotryptic, tryptic, and  
30 peptidyl-glutamyl peptide hydrolizing activities, i.e., the proteasome can cleave peptides on the carboxyl side of hydrophobic, basic, and acidic residues, respectively.

- 2 -

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The invention relates to novel compounds structurally related to lactacystin and lactacystin  $\beta$ -lactone. The invention also relates to pharmaceutical compositions including lactacystin and lactacystin analogs.

One aspect of the invention is a pharmaceutical composition containing a compound having the formula

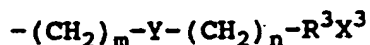


10

wherein  $Z^1$  is O, S,  $SO_2$ , NH, or  $NR_a$ ,  $R_a$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;  $X^1$  is O, S,  $CH_2$ , two singly bonded H,  $CH(R_b)$  in the E or Z configuration, or  $C(R_b)(R_c)$  in the E or Z configuration, each of  $R_b$  and  $R_c$ , independently, being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or halogen,  $X^1$  being two singly bonded H when  $Z^1$  is  $SO_2$ ;  $Z^2$  is O, S, NH,  $NR_d$ ,  $CHR^1$ , or  $CHOR^1$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, wherein  $R_d$  is  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl and  $R^1$  is H, halogen,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl,  $NR_dR_e$  (except where  $Z^2$  is  $CHOR^1$ ), or the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  taken together are a bivalent moiety, provided that when  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are taken together,  $Z^1$  is NH or  $NR_a$  and  $Z^2$  is  $CHR^1$ ;  $R_e$  being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, or  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and the bivalent moiety forming a  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or  $C_{6-12}$  aryl, where the H in  $CHR^1$  is deleted when  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  taken together form a  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl or  $C_{6-12}$  aryl;  $R^2$  is  $C_{1-6}$

- 3 -

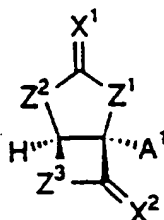
alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, azido, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, halogen, OR<sub>f</sub>, SR<sub>f</sub>, NR<sub>f</sub>R<sub>g</sub>, -ONR<sub>f</sub>R<sub>g</sub>, -NR<sub>g</sub>(OR<sub>f</sub>), or -NR<sub>g</sub>(SR<sub>f</sub>) (each of R<sub>f</sub> and R<sub>g</sub>, independently, being H, C<sub>1-6</sub>, alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, or C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl), or R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> taken together are a bivalent moiety, the bivalent moiety forming a C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heterocyclic radical, or C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl, where the H in CHR<sup>1</sup> is deleted when R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>2</sub> taken together form a C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl or C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl; A<sup>1</sup> is H, the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid, or is of the following formula,



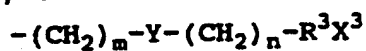
wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S, -(CH=CH)-, vinylidene, -C=NOR<sub>h</sub>, -C=NNR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>i</sub>, sulfonyl, methylene, CHX<sup>4</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted, X<sup>4</sup> being halogen, methyl, halomethyl, OR<sub>h</sub>, SR<sub>h</sub>, NR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>i</sub>, -NR<sub>i</sub>(OR<sub>h</sub>), or -NR<sub>i</sub>(NR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>i</sub>), wherein R<sub>h</sub> is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>1-10</sub> acyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, and C<sub>6-10</sub> arylsulfonyl; and each of R<sub>i</sub> and R<sub>i</sub>, independently is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, and C<sub>1-10</sub> acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and R<sup>3</sup> is straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylidene, straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylidene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylene, phenylene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylidene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylene, or deleted, and X<sup>3</sup> is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen, (C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl)oxycarbonyl, (C<sub>7-14</sub> arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl; or R<sup>3</sup> and X<sup>3</sup> taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid; and L<sup>0</sup> is an organic moiety having 1 to 25 carbon atoms, 0 to 10 heteroatoms, and 0 to 6 halogen atoms; and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

A second aspect is a pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound having the following formula

- 4 -



wherein Z<sup>1</sup> is O, S, SO<sub>2</sub>, NH, or NR<sub>a</sub>, R<sub>a</sub> being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl; X<sup>1</sup> is O, S, CH<sub>2</sub>, two singly bonded H, CH(R<sub>b</sub>) in the E or Z configuration, or C(R<sub>b</sub>)(R<sub>c</sub>) in the E or Z configuration, each of R<sub>b</sub> and R<sub>c</sub>, independently, being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heterocyclic radical, or halogen, provided that when Z<sup>1</sup> is SO<sub>2</sub>, X<sup>1</sup> is two singly bonded H; Z<sup>2</sup> is CHR<sup>1</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, R<sup>1</sup> being H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of a naturally occurring α-amino acid, OR<sub>d</sub>, SR<sub>d</sub>, or NR<sub>d</sub>R<sub>e</sub> (each of R<sub>d</sub> and R<sub>e</sub>, independently, being H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, or C<sub>2-5</sub> alkynyl); Z<sup>3</sup> is O, S, NH, or NR<sub>j</sub>, wherein R<sub>j</sub> is C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl; X<sup>2</sup> is O or S; and A<sup>1</sup> is H, the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid, or is of the following formula,



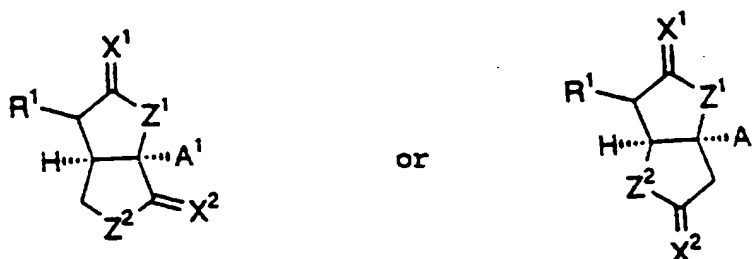
wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S, -(CH=CH)-, vinylidene, -C=NOR<sub>h</sub>, -C=NNR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>i</sub>, sulfonyl, methylene, CHX<sup>4</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted, X<sup>4</sup> being halogen, methyl, halomethyl, OR<sub>h</sub>, SR<sub>h</sub>, NR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>i</sub>, -NR<sub>i</sub>(OR<sub>h</sub>), or -NR<sub>i</sub>(NR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>i</sub>), wherein R<sub>h</sub> is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>1-10</sub> acyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, and C<sub>6-10</sub> arylsulfonyl; and each of R<sub>i</sub> and R<sub>i</sub>, independently is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, and C<sub>1-10</sub> acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; R<sup>3</sup> is straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylidene, straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylidene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylene, phenylene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylidene, C<sub>6-14</sub>

- 5 -

arylalkylene, or deleted; and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen, ( $C_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl, ( $C_{7-14}$  arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or  $C_{6-14}$  aryl; or  $R^3$  and  $X^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring

5  $\alpha$ -amino acid; and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

A third aspect is a pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound having one of the following formulae



10 wherein  $Z^1$  is NH or  $NR_a$ ,  $R_a$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;  $X^1$  is O, S,  $CH_2$ , two singly bonded H,  $CH(R_b)$  in the E or Z configuration, or  $C(R_b)(R_c)$  in the E or Z configuration, each of  $R_b$  and  $R_c$ , independently, being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic

15 radical, or halogen;  $Z^2$  is O, S, NH, or  $NR_j$ , wherein  $R_j$  is  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;  $R^1$  is in the (R) or (S) configuration, and is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of a naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$  (each of  $R_d$  and  $R_e$ ,

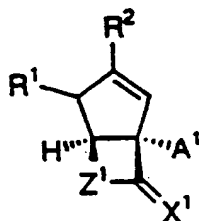
20 independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or halogen);  $X^2$  is O or S; and  $A^1$  is H, the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or is of the following formula,

25  $-(CH_2)_m-Y-(CH_2)_n-R^3X^3$   
 wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(CH=CH)-$ , vinylidene,  $-C=NOR_h$ ,  $-C=NNR_iR_l$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $CHX^4$  in the (R)

- 6 -

or (*S*) configuration, or deleted,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halomethyl,  $OR_h$ ,  $SR_h$ ,  $NR_1R_1$ ,  $-NR_1(OR_h)$ , or  $-NR_1(NR_1R_1)$ , wherein  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of  
 5  $R_1$  and  $R_1$ , independently is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $C_{1-10}$  acyl;  $m$  is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and  $n$  is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $C_{3-10}$   
 10 cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen,  $(C_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl,  $(C_{7-14}$  arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or  $C_{6-14}$  aryl; or  $R^3$  and  $X^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring  
 15  $\alpha$ -amino acid; and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

A fourth aspect is a pharmaceutical composition containing a compound having the following formula

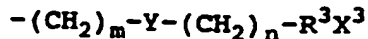


wherein  $Z^1$  is O, S, NH or  $NR_j$ ,  $R_j$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;  
 20  $X^1$  is O or S;  $R^1$  is in the (*R*) or (*S*) configuration, and is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of a naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$  (each of  $R_d$  and  $R_e$ , independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  
 25  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, or  $C_{2-5}$  alkynyl);  $R^2$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl, or halogen;  $X^2$  is O or S; and  $A^1$  is H, the



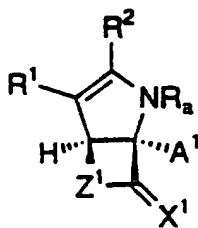
- 7 -

side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or is of the following formula,



- wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(\text{CH}=\text{CH})-$ , vinylidene,   
 5  $-\text{C}=\text{NOR}_h$ ,  $-\text{C}=\text{NNR}_i\text{R}_i$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $\text{CHX}^4$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted,  $\text{X}^4$  being halogen, methyl, halomethyl,  $\text{OR}_h$ ,  $\text{SR}_h$ ,  $\text{NR}_i\text{R}_i$ ,  $-\text{NR}_i(\text{OR}_h)$ , or  $-\text{NR}_i(\text{NR}_i\text{R}_i)$ , wherein  $\text{R}_h$  is selected from H,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $\text{C}_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $\text{C}_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of   
 10  $\text{R}_i$  and  $\text{R}_i$ , independently is selected from H,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $\text{C}_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $\text{C}_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $\text{C}_{1-10}$  acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $\text{R}^3$  is straight chain or branched  $\text{C}_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $\text{C}_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $\text{C}_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $\text{C}_{3-10}$    
 15 cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $\text{C}_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $\text{C}_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $\text{X}^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen,  $(\text{C}_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl,  $(\text{C}_{7-14}$  arylalkyl)-oxycarbonyl, or  $\text{C}_{6-14}$  aryl; or  $\text{R}^3$  and  $\text{X}^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring   
 20  $\alpha$ -amino acid; and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

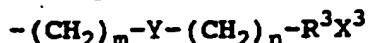
A fifth aspect is a pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound having the following formula



- wherein  $\text{Z}^1$  is O, S, NH or  $\text{NR}_j$ ,  $\text{R}_j$  being  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  alkyl;   
 25  $\text{X}^1$  is O or S;  $\text{R}^1$  is H,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $\text{C}_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $\text{C}_{2-6}$  alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of

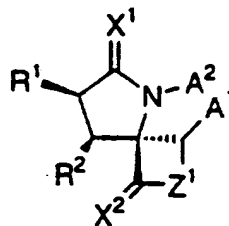
- 8 -

a naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$  (each of  $R_d$  and  $R_e$ , independently, being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  hetero-cyclic radical, or halogen);  $R^2$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl, or halogen;  $R_a$  is  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl; and  $A^1$  is H, the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or is of the following formula,



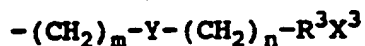
- 10 wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(CH=CH)-$ , vinylidene,  $-C=NOR_h$ ,  $-C=NNR_1R_1$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $CHX^4$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halomethyl,  $OR_h$ ,  $SR_h$ ,  $NR_1R_1$ ,  $-NR_1(OR_h)$ , or  $-NR_1(NR_1R_1)$ , wherein  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of  $R_1$  and  $R_1$ , independently is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $C_{1-10}$  acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen,  $(C_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl,  $(C_{7-14}$  arylalkyl)-oxycarbonyl, or  $C_{6-14}$  aryl; or  $R^3$  and  $X^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid; and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

A sixth aspect is a pharmaceutical composition containing a compound having the formula



- 9 -

- wherein  $X^1$  is O, S,  $CH_2$ , two singly bonded H,  $CH(R_b)$  in the E or Z configuration, or  $C(R_b)(R_c)$  in the E or Z configuration, each of  $R_b$  and  $R_c$ , independently, being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or halogen;  $Z^1$  is O, S, NH, or  $NR_a$ ,  $R_a$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;  $R^1$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$  (each of  $R_d$  and  $R_e$ , independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  halo-alkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or halogen); or  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  taken together are a bivalent moiety which forms a  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or  $C_{6-12}$  aryl;  $R^2$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, azido,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, halogen,  $OR_f$ ,  $SR_f$ ,  $NR_fR_g$ ,  $-ONR_fR_g$ ,  $-NR_g(OR_f)$ , or  $-NR_g(SR_f)$  (each of  $R_f$  and  $R_g$ , independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, or  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl), or  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  taken together are a bivalent moiety, the bivalent moiety forming a  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or  $C_{6-12}$  aryl;  $X^2$  is O or S; and  $A^1$  is in the (R) or (S) configuration, and each of  $A^1$  and  $A^2$  is independently H, the side chain of any naturally occurring amino  $\alpha$ -acid, or is of the following formula,

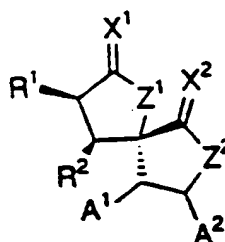


- wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(CH=CH)-$ , vinylidene,  $-C=NOR_h$ ,  $-C=NNR_iR_i$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $CHX^4$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halomethyl,  $OR_h$ ,  $SR_h$ ,  $NR_iR_i$ ,  $-NR_i(OR_h)$ , or  $-NR_i(NR_iR_i)$ , wherein  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of  $R_i$  and  $R_i$ , independently is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $C_{1-10}$  acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is

- 10 -

straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen,  $(C_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl,  $(C_{7-14}$  arylalkyl)-oxycarbonyl, or  $C_{6-14}$  aryl; or  $R^3$  and  $X^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid; and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

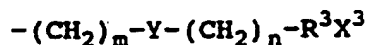
A seventh aspect is a pharmaceutical composition containing a compound having the following formula



wherein  $Z^1$  is NH or  $NR_a$ ,  $NR_a$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;  
 $X^1$  is O, S,  $CH_2$ , two singly bonded H,  $CH(R_b)$  in the E or Z configuration, or  $C(R_b)(R_c)$  in the E or Z configuration, each of  $R_b$  and  $R_c$ , independently, being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or halogen;  
 $Z^2$  is O, S, NH, or  $NR_j$ ,  $R_j$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;  
 $R^1$  is in the (R) or (S) configuration, and is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of any naturally occurring amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$  (each of  $R_d$  and  $R_e$ , independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or halogen); or  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  taken together are a bivalent moiety which forms a  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or  $C_{6-12}$  aryl;  $R^2$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$

- 11 -

haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, azido, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, halogen, OR<sub>f</sub>, SR<sub>f</sub>, NR<sub>f</sub>R<sub>g</sub>, -ONR<sub>f</sub>R<sub>g</sub>, -NR<sub>g</sub>(OR<sub>f</sub>), or -NR<sub>g</sub>(SR<sub>f</sub>) (each of R<sub>f</sub> and R<sub>g</sub>, independently, being H, C<sub>1-6</sub>, alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, or C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl), or R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> taken together are a bivalent moiety, the bivalent moiety forming a C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heterocyclic radical, or C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl; X<sup>2</sup> is O or S; and each of A<sup>1</sup> and A<sup>2</sup> is independently in the (R) or (S) configuration, and is independently H, the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid, or is of the following formula,

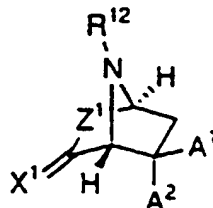


wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S, -(CH=CH)-, vinylidene, -C=NOR<sub>h</sub>, -C=NNR<sub>1</sub>R<sub>1</sub>, sulfonyl, methylene, CHX<sup>4</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted, X<sup>4</sup> being halogen, methyl, halomethyl, OR<sub>h</sub>, SR<sub>h</sub>, NR<sub>1</sub>R<sub>1</sub>, -NR<sub>1</sub>(OR<sub>h</sub>), or -NR<sub>1</sub>(NR<sub>1</sub>R<sub>1</sub>), wherein R<sub>h</sub> is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, and C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, and each of R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>1</sub>, independently is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, and C<sub>1-10</sub> acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and R<sup>3</sup> is straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylidene, straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylidene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylene, phenylene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylidene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylene, or deleted, and X<sup>3</sup> is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen, (C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl)oxycarbonyl, (C<sub>7-14</sub> arylalkyl)-oxycarbonyl, or C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl; or R<sup>3</sup> and X<sup>3</sup> taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid; and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

30 An eighth aspect is a pharmaceutical composition

- 12 -

containing a compound of the formula

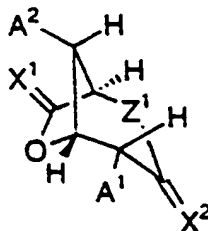


- wherein  $Z^1$  is O, NH, or  $NR_a$ ,  $NR_a$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;  $X^1$  is O, S,  $CH_2$ , or two singly bonded H; each of  $A^1$  and  $A^2$  is independently H, the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or is of the following formula,
- $$-(CH_2)_m-Y-(CH_2)_n-R^3X^3$$
- wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(CH=CH)-$ , vinylidene,  $-C=NOR_h$ ,  $-C=NNR_1R_{1'}$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $CHX^4$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halomethyl,  $OR_h$ ,  $SR_h$ ,  $NR_1R_{1'}$ ,  $-NR_1(OR_h)$ , or  $-NR_1(NR_1R_{1'})$ , wherein  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of  $R_1$  and  $R_{1'}$ , independently is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $C_{1-10}$  acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen,  $(C_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl,  $(C_{7-14}$  arylalkyl)-oxycarbonyl, or  $C_{6-14}$  aryl; or  $R^3$  and  $X^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid; and  $R^{12}$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, or  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl; and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

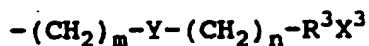
A ninth aspect is a pharmaceutical composition

- 13 -

comprising a compound having the formula



wherein  $Z^1$  is NH, or  $NR_a$ ,  $NR_a$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;  
each of  $X^1$  and  $X^2$ , independently, is O or S; each of  $A^1$   
5 and  $A^2$  is independently in the (R) or (S) configuration,  
and is independently H, the side chain of any naturally  
occurring amino acid, or is of the following formula,



wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(CH=CH)-$ , vinylidene,  
10  $-C=NOR_h$ ,  $-C=NNR_1R_1$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $CHX^4$  in the (R)  
or (S) configuration, or deleted,  $X^4$  being halogen,  
methyl, halomethyl,  $OR_h$ ,  $SR_h$ ,  $NR_1R_1$ ,  $-NR_1(OR_h)$ , or  
 $-NR_1(NR_1R_1)$ , wherein  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  
 $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of  
15  $R_1$  and  $R_1$ , independently is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  
 $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $C_{1-10}$  acyl;  
 $m$  is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and  $n$  is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is  
straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain  
or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $C_{3-10}$   
20 cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $C_{6-14}$   
arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol,  
carboxyl, amino, halogen,  $(C_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl,  $(C_{7-14}$   
arylalkyl)-oxycarbonyl, or  $C_{6-14}$  aryl; or  $R^3$  and  $X^3$  taken  
together are the side chain of any naturally occurring  
25  $\alpha$ -amino acid; and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

Many of the compounds described above are novel  
compounds; the novel compounds are also claimed. The  
invention also encompasses lactacystin analogues that can  
be made by the synthetic routes described herein, and

- 14 -

methods of treating a subject having a condition mediated by proteins processed by the proteasome by administering (e.g., orally) to a subject an effective amount of a pharmaceutical composition disclosed herein. These  
5 methods include treatments for cancer, inflammation (e.g., inflammatory responses associated with allergies, bone marrow or solid organ transplantation, or disease states), psoriasis, and restenosis.

The compounds disclosed herein are highly  
10 selective for the proteasome, and do not inhibit other proteases such as trypsin,  $\alpha$ -chymotrypsin, calpain I, calpain II, papain, and cathepsin B.

Other features or advantages of the present invention will be apparent from the following detailed  
15 description, and also from the appending claims.

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

##### Terms

The term "naturally occurring amino acid" is meant to include the 20 common  $\alpha$ -amino acids (Gly, Ala, Val,  
20 Leu, Ile, Ser, Thr, Asp, Asn, Lys, Glu, Gln, Arg, His, Phe, Cys, Trp, Tyr, Met and Pro), and other amino acids that are natural products, such as norleucine, ethylglycine, ornithine, methylbutenylmethylthreonine, and phenylglycine. Examples of amino acid side chains  
25 include H (glycine), methyl (alanine),  $-(CH_2-(C=O)-NH_2$  (asparagine),  $-CH_2-SH$  (cysteine), and  $-CH(OH)CH_3$  (threonine).

The term "inhibitor" is meant to describe a compound that blocks or reduces the activity of an enzyme  
30 (e.g. the proteasome, or the X/MB1 subunit or  $\alpha$ -chain of the 20S proteasome). An inhibitor may act with competitive, uncompetitive, or noncompetitive inhibition. An inhibitor may bind reversibly or irreversibly, and therefore the term includes compounds which are suicide



- 15 -

substrates of an enzyme. An inhibitor may modify one or more sites on or near the active site of the enzyme, or it may cause a conformational change elsewhere on the enzyme. Thus, some compounds disclosed herein (e.g., where  $L^0$  is an oxiranyl or aldehyde group) react with the enzyme by bonding to the carbon atom corresponding to C4 of lactacystin (e.g., resulting in a C4 having a hydroxyl or thiol), while other compounds react with the enzyme to release a leaving group (e.g.,  $L^1$ ), corresponding to an acylation.

An alkyl group is a branched or unbranched hydrocarbon that may be substituted or unsubstituted. Examples of branched alkyl groups include isopropyl, sec-butyl, isobutyl, tert-butyl, sec-pentyl, isopentyl, tert-pentyl, isohexyl. Substituted alkyl groups may have one, two, three or more substituents, which may be the same or different, each replacing a hydrogen atom. Substituents are halogen (e.g., F, Cl, Br, and I), hydroxyl, protected hydroxyl, amino, protected amino, carboxy, protected carboxy, cyano, methylsulfonylamino, alkoxy, acyloxy, nitro, and lower haloalkyl. Similarly, cycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, alkylaryl, heteroaryl, and heterocyclic radical groups may be substituted with one or more of the above substituting groups. Examples of cycloalkyl groups are cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, and cyclooctyl. An aryl group is a  $C_{6-20}$  aromatic ring, wherein the ring is made of carbon atoms (e.g.,  $C_{6-14}$ ,  $C_{6-10}$  aryl groups, wherein  $C_8$  aryl may be an alkylaryl such as 2,3-dimethylphenyl or an arylalkyl such as phenylethyl, or an alkylarylalkyl such as o-methyl-benzyl). Examples of haloalkyl include fluoromethyl, dichloromethyl, trifluoromethyl, 1,1-difluoroethyl, and 2,2-dibromoethyl.

A heterocyclic radical contains at least one ring structure which contains carbon atoms and at least one

- 16 -

heteroatom (e.g., N, O, S, or P). A heteroaryl is an aromatic heterocyclic radical. Examples of heterocyclic radicals and heteroaryl groups include: thiazolyl, thienyl, furyl, 1-isobenzofuranyl, 2H-chromen-3-yl, 2H-pyrrolyl, N-pyrrolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, isothiazolyl, isooxazolyl, pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyradazinyl, indoliziny, isoindolyl, indolyl, indazolyl, purinyl, phthalazinyl, cinnolinyl, and pteridinyl. A heterocyclic radical may be attached to another moiety via a carbon atom or a heteroatom of the heterocyclic radical.

A ( $C_n$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl group has the formula  $R-O-(C=O)-$ . ( $C_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl, therefore, includes methoxycarbonyl and hexyloxycarbonyl. A  $C_{1-10}$  acyl group as used herein is of the formula  $-(C=O)-L_3$  and contains 1 to 10 carbon atoms (e.g.,  $C_{1-6}$ ) and 1-5 heteroatoms (at least one oxygen). Examples of such acyl groups include formyl, acetyl, benzyloxycarbonyl, tert-butoxycarbonyl, trifluoroethyloxycarbonyl, thiobenzoyl, phenylamidocarbonyl, and 4-nitrophenoxycarbonyl.

An alkylene is a bivalent radical derived from alkanes by removing two hydrogens from two different carbon atoms. Examples of alkylenes include  $-CH_2-CH(R)-CH_2-$  and 1,4-cyclohexylene. An alkylidene is a bivalent radical derived from alkenes by removing two hydrogens from the same carbon atom, such as 1-propenyl-3-ylidene ( $=CH-CH_2-CH_2-$ ).

An aromatic carbon atom, as used herein, is a carbon atom within an aromatic system such as benzene or naphthalene or a heteroaromatic system such as quinoline. Examples of nonaromatic carbon atoms include the carbons atoms in  $R-(C=O)-R$ ,  $-CH_2Cl$ ,  $-CH_2-$  and  $R-(C=O)-O-R$ . A fragment formula weight is the combined atomic weight of the fragment or moiety indicated. For example, the

- 17 -

fragment formula weight of methyl is 15 and the fragment formula weight of hydroxyl is 17.

A leaving group departs from a substrate with the pair of electrons of the covalent bond between the leaving group and the substrate; preferred leaving groups stabilize those electrons via the presence of electron withdrawing groups, aromaticity, resonance structures, or a combination thereof. Examples include halide (I and Br are preferred), mesylate, trifluoromethanesulfonate, *p*-toluenesulfonate, *p*-nitrobenzenesulfonate, benzoate, *p*-nitrobenzoate, *p*-nitrobenzyl, and C<sub>2-5</sub> haloalkylcarbonyloxy such as trifluoroacetate.

Numerous thiol-, amino-, hydroxy- and carboxy-protecting groups are well-known to those in the art. In general, the species of protecting group is not critical, provided that it is stable to the conditions of any subsequent reaction(s) on other positions of the compound and can be removed at the appropriate point without adversely affecting the remainder of the molecule. In addition, a protecting group may be substituted for another after substantive synthetic transformations are complete. Clearly, where a compound differs from a compound disclosed herein only in that one or more protecting groups of the disclosed compound has been substituted with a different protecting group, that compound is within the invention. For example, where a compound differs from a compound disclosed herein only in that one or more hydrogens from a thiol-, amino-, or hydroxyl- moiety (or a hydrogen or hydroxyl from a carboxyl moiety) has been substituted with a protecting group to form a carboxyl or sulfonyl ester, that protected compound is within the invention. Sulfonyl esters include alkylsulfonyls (e.g., methylsulfonyl or mesyl) and arylsulfonyls (e.g., tosyl). Further examples and conditions are found in T.W. Greene, Protective

- 18 -

*Groups in Organic Chemistry*, (1st ed., 1981; 2nd ed., 1991, T.W. Greene and P.G.M. Wuts).

The invention also encompasses isotopically-labelled counterparts of compounds disclosed herein. An  
5 isotopically-labelled compound of the invention has one or more atoms replaced with an isotope having a detectable particle- or x-ray-emitting (radioactive) nucleus or a magnetogyric nucleus. Examples of such nuclei include  $^2\text{H}$ ,  $^3\text{H}$ ,  $^{13}\text{C}$ ,  $^{15}\text{N}$ ,  $^{19}\text{F}$ ,  $^{29}\text{Si}$ ,  $^{31}\text{P}$ ,  $^{32}\text{P}$  and  
10  $^{125}\text{I}$ . Isotopically-labelled compounds of the invention are particularly useful as probes or research tools for spectrometric analyses, radioimmunoassays, binding assays based on  $\gamma$ - or  $\beta$ -scintillation, fluorography, autoradiography, and kinetic studies such as inhibition  
15 studies or determination of primary and secondary isotope effects.

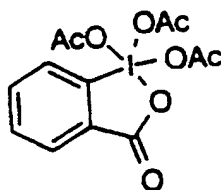
The following abbreviations are used in the synthetic description:

AIBN, 2,2'-azobis(isobutyronitrile); Bn, benzyl;  
20 BOP-Cl, bis(2-oxo-3-oxazolidinyl)phosphinic chloride; Bu<sub>2</sub>BOTf, dibutylboron triflate; CDI, N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole; Cp, cyclopentadienyl; DBU, 1,8-diazabicyclo-[5.4.0]undec-7-ene; DCC dicyclohexylcarbodiimide; DDQ, 2,3-dichloro-5,6-dicyano-1,4-benzoquinone; DEAD,  
25 diethylazodicarboxylate; DIBAL-H diisobutylaluminum hydride; DMF, dimethylformamide; Gilbert reagent, dimethyl diazomethylphosphonate; LDA, lithium diisopropylamide; LiHMDS, lithium hexamethyldisilazamide; mesylate, methanesulfonic acid ester; Mitsunobu reagents,  
30 (DEAD, PPh<sub>3</sub>, and nucleophile); NMO, N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide; Ph, phenyl; PhFl, 9-phenyl-9-fluorenyl; Ph<sub>2</sub>NTf, N-phenyltrifluoromethanesulfonimide; Swern oxidation reagents ((COCl)<sub>2</sub>, DMSO, Et<sub>3</sub>N); TBAF, tetrabutylammonium fluoride; TBS, tert-butyldimethylsilyl; TCDI,  
35 thiono-N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole; Tf<sub>2</sub>O, trifluoromethane-

- 19 -

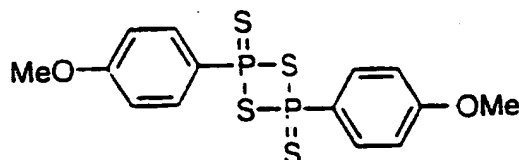
sulfonic acid anhydride; TMS, trimethylsilyl; triflate, trifluoromethane sulfonate ester; and TsCl, *p*-toluene-sulfonyl chloride.

The following reagents are also used:

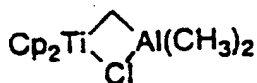


5

Dess-Martin periodinane



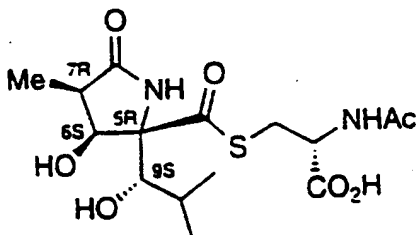
Lawesson's reagent



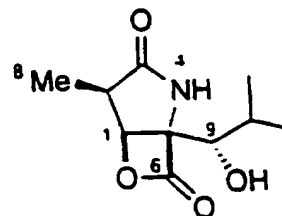
Tebbe reagent

The invention is based, in part, on the structure-function information disclosed herein which suggests the following preferred stereochemical relationships. Note  
 10 that a preferred compound may have one, two, three, or more stereocenters having the indicated up-down (or  $\beta$ - $\alpha$  where  $\beta$  as drawn herein is above the plane of the page) or (*R*)-(*S*) relationship. In some embodiments, preferred configurations are 7(*R*), 9(*S*), 6(*S*), or combinations  
 15 thereof. In lactacystin analogs,  $R^2$  and  $L^0$  preferably have a *syn* relationship to allow formation of a lactone or lactam-type intermediate, which is believed to be related to the activity of the compounds disclosed herein as proteasome inhibitors. However, it is not required  
 20 that every stereocenter conform to the structures below.

- 20 -



Lactacystin

Lactacystin  $\beta$ -lactone

A person of skill will recognize that the compounds described herein preserve certain stereochemical and electronic characteristics found in either lactacystin or lactacystin  $\beta$ -lactone. For example, the hydroxyisobutyl group and the configuration of the hydroxyl group on C9 are believed to be important for recognition of the target, as are the configurations of the C6 hydroxyl and the C7 methyl of the  $\gamma$ -lactam ring. However, the N-acetylcysteine moiety is not required for activity. Moieties such as  $R^2$ ,  $R^1$ , and particularly  $A^1$  (e.g., where  $A^1$  is a side chain of a naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid such as Val, Leu, Lys, and Phe) can be modified to control selectivity for the proteasome, and selectivity for a particular peptidase activity of the proteasome. In combination, these moieties simulate certain peptides or proteins processed or degraded by the proteasome (i.e., are peptidomimetics).

The invention is also based, in part, on the finding that lactacystin and lactacystin  $\beta$ -lactone are highly selective for the X/MB1 subunit and  $\alpha$ -chain of the proteasome and do not inhibit the activity of proteases such as trypsin,  $\alpha$ -chymotrypsin, calpain I, calpain II,

- 21 -

cathepsin, and papain. Such selectivity is useful to formulate a pharmaceutical composition with fewer side effects and to evaluate basic research results involving any subunit of the proteasome in conjunction with the selective inhibition of the X/MB1 subunit and  $\alpha$ -chain.

Turning to the novel compounds described by the formulas of compounds contained within the pharmaceutical compositions, several embodiments are next considered.

Embodiments of the first aspect include compounds having one or more of the following limitations. In one limitation  $L^1$  is linked by an oxygen or preferably sulfur atom to the carbon atom bonded to  $X^2$ . Such an  $L^1$  forms a thioester, thus providing a good leaving group. The precise nature of the thioester group is generally not critical. In initial experiments, the magnitude of activity measured by  $K_{obs}/[I]$  for both large and small thioesters was about the same, whether the thioester terminus was a simple arylalkyl group or a more complex, branched moiety with intervening amide linkages and terminal carboxylic acid, esters, or aminocarbonyl groups. In one embodiment,  $Z^1$  is NH or  $NR_a$ ;  $X^1$  is O or S;  $Z^2$  is  $CHR^1$  or  $CHOR^1$ ,  $R^1$  being H, halogen,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, or  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl;  $R^2$  is  $OR_f$ ; and  $L^0$  is  $-(C=X^2)-L^1$ ,  $X^2$  being O and  $L^1$  being linked by a sulfur atom to the carbon atom bonded to  $X^2$ . In another embodiment,  $L^1$  is selected from substituted or unsubstituted  $C_{6-20}$  arylalkylcarbonylthio,  $C_{6-20}$  arylthio,  $C_{2-8}$  alkylcarbonylthio, and  $C_{1-12}$  alkylthio. As defined above in the "Terms" section, arylthio includes arylthio, alkylarylthio, arylalkylthio, and alkylarylalkylthio groups.

In other limitations,  $A^1$  is  $C_{5-20}$  alkyl when  $L^0$  is carboxyl or  $(C_{1-4}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl and  $A^1$  is alkyl; only one of  $A^1$  and  $L^0$  is selected from carboxyl and  $(C_{1-4}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl;  $A^1$  cannot be H;  $L^1$  has at least 3 carbon atoms when  $Z^1$  and  $Z^2$  are both NH, and  $A^1$  is

- 22 -

methoxy; when  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are taken together,  $Z^2$  is  $CR^1$ ; and when one of  $A^1$  and  $L^0$  is  $(C_{1-4} \text{ alkyl})\text{oxycarbonyl}$  or carboxyl, the other of  $A^1$  and  $L^0$  has a fragment formula weight of at least 20. Novel compounds of the first, 5 fifth, and seventh aspects generally do not have  $A^1$  being H.

Further embodiments of the first aspect, when  $Z^1$  is NH and  $Z^2$  is  $(R) \text{CHR}^1$ , are compounds wherein:  $L^1$  has between 0 and 3 nonaromatic acyclic carbon atoms when 10 there are 5 heteroatoms;  $L^1$  has between 6 and 15 nonaromatic acyclic carbon atoms when there is only one oxygen atom; and  $L^1$  has 0, 1, 3, or 5 nonaromatic carbon atoms when there are three halogen atoms.

Further embodiments of the first aspect include a 15 compound wherein  $Z^2$  is  $CHR^1$  and  $Z^1$  is NH or  $NR_a$ ; wherein  $L^0$  is  $C_{2-16} \text{ oxiranyl}$ ;  $L^1$  is hydroxy,  $C_{1-12} \text{ alkoxy}$ ,  $C_{1-12} \text{ alkyl-sulfonyloxy}$ ,  $C_{6-20} \text{ arylsulfonyloxy}$ ,  $C_{7-20} \text{ arylalkyl}$ ,  $C_{6-20} \text{ aryloxy}$ ,  $C_{6-20} \text{ arylalkylcarbonyloxy}$ ,  $C_{2-8} \text{ alkyl-carbonyloxy}$ ,  $C_{2-8} \text{ alkylcarbonylthio}$ ,  $C_{1-12} \text{ alkylthio}$ , 20  $C_{6-20} \text{ arylalkylcarbonylthio}$ , or  $C_{6-20} \text{ arylthio}$ ; or  $L^2$  is H,  $C_{1-2} \text{ haloalkyl}$ , or  $C_{1-6} \text{ alkyl}$ . In addition,  $Z^2$  is O, S, NH, or  $NR_d$ . In another embodiment,  $Z^2$  is O, S, NHJ,  $NR_d$ , or  $CHR^1$ ; and  $R_h$  is H,  $C_{1-6} \text{ alkyl}$ ,  $C_{1-6} \text{ haloalkyl}$ ,  $C_{2-6} \text{ alkenyl}$ , or  $C_{2-6} \text{ alkynyl}$ .

25 Further embodiments of the first aspect include compounds wherein  $Z^1$  is O, S, or  $SO_2$ ; wherein  $Z^2$  is O, S, NH, or  $NR_d$ ; wherein  $X^1$  is  $CH_2$ ,  $CHR_b$ , or  $C(R_b)(R_c)$ ; wherein  $R^2$  is  $C_{1-6} \text{ alkyl}$ ,  $C_{1-6} \text{ haloalkyl}$ ,  $C_{2-6} \text{ alkenyl}$ , or halogen; wherein  $R^2$  is  $OR_f$ ,  $SR_f$ , or  $NR_fR_g$ ; wherein  $Z^2$  is in the 30 beta (above plane of page) configuration; wherein  $CHX^4$  is in the alpha (below plane of paper) configuration; wherein  $R^2$  is in the beta configuration; or combinations thereof.

The invention also provides a pharmaceutical 35 composition wherein  $L^0$  is H or  $-(C=X^2)-L^1$ ,  $X^2$  being O and



- 23 -

$L^1$  being linked by an oxygen or sulfur atom to the carbon atom bonded to  $X^2$ ; where only one of  $A^1$  and  $L^0$  is selected from carboxyl and  $(C_{1-4} \text{ alkyl})\text{oxy carbonyl}$ ; wherein  $L^1$  is hydroxy,  $C_{1-12}$  alkoxy,  $C_{1-12}$  alkylsulfonyloxy,  $C_{6-20}$

5 arylsulfonyloxy,  $C_{7-20}$  arylalkyl,  $C_{6-20}$  aryloxy,  $C_{6-20}$  arylalkylcarbonyloxy,  $C_{2-8}$  alkylcarbonyloxy,  $C_{6-20}$  arylalkylcarbonylthio,  $C_{6-20}$  arylthio,  $C_{2-8}$  alkylcarbonylthio, or  $C_{1-12}$  alkylthio.

The invention also provides embodiments wherein  $Z^1$  is NH or  $NR_a$ ;  $X^1$  is O or S;  $Z^2$  is  $CHR^1$  or  $CHOR^1$ ,  $R^1$  being H, halogen,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, or  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl;  $R^2$  is  $OR_f$ ; and  $L^0$  is  $-(C=X^2)-L^1$ ,  $X^2$  being O and  $L^1$  being linked by a sulfur atom to the carbon atom bonded to  $X^2$ . Individual compounds include lactacystin, clasto-lactacystin

15 trifluoroethyl ester, descarboxylactacystin, lactacystin amide, and phenylacetyl lactacystin.

Embodiments of the second aspect include compounds wherein  $CHX^4$  is in the (S) configuration when  $X^4$  is hydroxyl and  $-(CH_2)_n-R^3X^3$  is isopropyl; wherein the moiety

20  $-(CH_2)_n-R^3X^3$  has between 5 and 20 carbon atoms when  $X^4$  is hydroxyl,  $m$  is 0, and  $Z^1$  is NH; wherein  $Z^1$  is NH or  $NR_a$ ; wherein  $Z^1$  is O, S, or  $SO_2$ ; wherein  $Z^1$  is  $NR_a$ ; wherein  $X^1$  is  $CH_2$ ,  $CH(R_b)$ , or  $C(R_b)(R_c)$ ; wherein  $Z^2$  is in the beta (above plane of page) configuration; wherein  $CHX^4$  is in

25 the alpha (below plane of paper) configuration; wherein  $R^1$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, or halogen; wherein  $R^1$  is a side chain of a naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$ ; or combinations of the above.

30 Another embodiment of the second aspect includes compounds wherein  $Z^1$  is NH or  $NR_a$ ;  $X^1$  is O or S;  $Z^2$  is  $CHR^1$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, wherein  $R^1$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of a naturally occurring

35 amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$  (each of  $R_d$  and  $R_e$ ,

- 24 -

independently, being H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, or C<sub>2-5</sub> alkynyl); Z<sup>3</sup> is O or NH; X<sup>2</sup> is O or S; and A<sup>1</sup> is the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid, or is of the following formula,



wherein Y is C=O or CHX<sup>4</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted, X<sup>4</sup> being halogen, methyl, halomethyl, or OR<sub>h</sub>, wherein R<sub>h</sub> is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>1-10</sub> acyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, 10 and C<sub>6-10</sub> arylsulfonyl; n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and R<sup>3</sup> is straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylene, phenylene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylene, or deleted; and X<sup>3</sup> is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen, or C<sub>6-10</sub> aryl; or R<sup>3</sup> and X<sup>3</sup> taken together are the side 15 chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid.

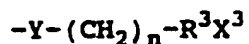
The invention also provides a compound wherein Z<sup>1</sup> is NH and Z<sup>3</sup> is O; or a compound wherein each of Z<sup>1</sup> and Z<sup>3</sup> is NH; or a compound wherein at least four (e.g., at least 5, or all) of the following limitations apply: Z<sup>1</sup> 20 is NH or NR<sub>a</sub>; X<sup>1</sup> is O or S; Z<sup>2</sup> is CHR<sup>1</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, hydroxyl, or OR<sub>d</sub>, R<sub>d</sub> being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl; Z<sup>3</sup> is O or NH; X<sup>2</sup> is O; Z<sup>3</sup> is O or NH; and A<sup>1</sup> is the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid, or CHX<sup>4</sup>, X<sup>4</sup> being 25 halogen, methyl, halomethyl, or OR<sub>h</sub>, R<sub>h</sub> being selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>1-10</sub> acyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, and C<sub>6-10</sub> arylsulfonyl; R<sup>3</sup> is straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylene, phenylene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylene, or deleted; m is 0, 1, or 2 30 and n is 0 or 1; and X<sup>3</sup> is H.

The invention also provides a pharmaceutical composition wherein Z<sup>1</sup> is NH or NR<sub>a</sub>; X<sup>1</sup> is O or S; Z<sup>2</sup> is CHR<sup>1</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, 35 hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of a naturally occurring

- 25 -

$\alpha$ -amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$  (each of  $R_d$  and  $R_e$ , independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, or  $C_{2-5}$  alkynyl);  $Z^3$  is O or NH;  $X^2$  is O or S; and  $A^1$  is the side chain of any naturally occurring

5  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or is of the following formula,



wherein Y is  $C=O$  or  $CHX^4$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halomethyl, or  $OR_h$ , wherein  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl, 10  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl,  $C_{1-10}$  acyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl, and  $C_{6-10}$  arylsulfonyl; n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted; and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen, 15 or  $C_{6-10}$  aryl; or  $R^3$  and  $X^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid.

Another embodiment includes a compound wherein  $X^2$  is O, and  $A^1$  is the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or  $X^4$  is halogen, methyl, halomethyl, or 20  $OR_h$ ,  $R_h$  being selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{1-10}$  acyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl, and  $C_{6-10}$  arylsulfonyl;  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted; m is 0, 1, or 2 and n is 0 or 1; and  $X^3$  is H. Individual 25 lactone analogs include clasto-lactacystin  $\beta$ -lactone.

Embodiments of the third aspect include compounds wherein: when  $X^1$  is 2 singly bonded H and  $R^1$  has only one oxygen, then the fragment formula weight of  $R^1$  is at least 30 atomic mass units; when  $X^1$  is 2 singly bonded H 30 and  $R^1$  is 2 H, and  $A^1$  is alkyl, then  $A^1$  has at least 3 carbon atoms;  $A^1$ ,  $R^1$  and  $X^1$  taken together have at least one carbon atom, halogen, or heteratom; when  $X^1$  is two singly bonded H, and  $R^1$  is H,  $X^2$  is O, and  $R_h$  is alkyl, then  $R_h$  is  $C_{4-6}$  alkyl; and when n is 2,  $R_h$  is  $C_{1-6}$  35 haloalkyl.

- 26 -

Further embodiments of the third aspect include compounds wherein:  $X^1$  is  $CH_2$ , two singly bonded H,  $CH(R_b)$  or  $C(R_b)(R_c)$ ;  $Z^2$  is O or S;  $Z^2$  is NH or  $NR_j$ ;  $R^1$  is  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, or  
 5 halogen;  $R^1$  is a side chain of a naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$ ;  $A^1$  cannot be H;  $R^1$  is in the beta configuration;  $X^4$  is in the alpha configuration; or combinations thereof.

Embodiments of the fourth aspect include compounds  
 10 wherein:  $Z^2$  is O or S;  $Z^2$  is NH or  $NR_j$ ;  $X^1$  is O or S;  $R^1$  is  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, or halogen;  $R^1$  is a side chain of a naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$ ;  $R^2$  is H,  $C_{1-3}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-3}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-3}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-3}$  alkynyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$   
 15 heteroaryl, or halogen;  $R^2$  is H,  $C_{3-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{3-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{4-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{4-6}$  alkynyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl, or  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl;  $A^1$  cannot be H;  $R^1$  is in the beta configuration;  $X^4$  is in the alpha configuration; or combinations of the above.

Further embodiments of the fifth aspect are  
 20 compounds wherein:  $Z^1$  is O or S;  $Z^2$  is NH or  $NR_j$ ;  $R^1$  is H,  $C_{1-3}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-3}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-3}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-3}$  alkynyl, or a side chain of a naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$ ;  $R^1$  is H,  $C_{4-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{4-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{4-6}$   
 25 alkenyl,  $C_{4-6}$  alkynyl, halogen, or a side chain of a naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$ ;  $R^2$  is H,  $C_{1-3}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-3}$  halo-alkyl,  $C_{2-3}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-3}$  alkynyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl, or halogen;  $R^2$  is H,  $C_{4-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{4-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{4-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{4-6}$  alkynyl,  $C_{6-12}$   
 30 aryl, or  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl;  $R_a$  is  $C_{1-3}$  alkyl;  $A^1$  cannot be H;  $X^4$  is in the alpha configuration; or combinations thereof.

Embodiments of the sixth aspect are compounds  
 wherein:  $X^1$  is O or S;  $X^1$  is  $CH_2$ , two singly bonded H,  
 35  $CH(R_b)$ , or  $C(R_b)(R_c)$ ;  $Z^1$  is O or S;  $Z^1$  is NH or  $NR_a$ ;  $R^1$  is

- 27 -

C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-3</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkynyl, halogen, or a side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid; R<sup>1</sup> is OR<sub>d</sub>, SR<sub>d</sub>, or NR<sub>d</sub>R<sub>e</sub>; R<sup>1</sup> is C<sub>4-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>4-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>4-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>4-6</sub> alkynyl, a side chain of  
 5 any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, OR<sub>d</sub>, SR<sub>d</sub>, or NR<sub>d</sub>R<sub>e</sub>; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> taken together are a bivalent moiety; R<sup>1</sup> is in the beta configuration; R<sup>2</sup> is in the beta configuration; R<sup>2</sup> is C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-3</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, or halogen; R<sup>2</sup> is C<sub>4-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>4-6</sub> haloalkyl,  
 10 C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, or C<sub>3-8</sub> heterocyclic radical; A<sup>1</sup> has a higher fragment formula weight than A<sup>2</sup>; A<sup>1</sup> has a lower fragment formula weight than A<sup>2</sup>; A<sup>1</sup> is in the (R) configuration; A<sup>1</sup> is in the (S) configuration; only one of A<sup>1</sup> and A<sup>2</sup> is H; A<sup>1</sup> is a side  
 15 chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid; or combinations thereof.

Embodiments of the seventh aspect are compounds wherein: X<sup>1</sup> is O or S; X<sup>1</sup> is CH<sub>2</sub>, two singly bonded H, CH(R<sub>b</sub>) or C(R<sub>b</sub>)(R<sub>c</sub>); Z<sup>2</sup> is O or S; Z<sup>2</sup> is NH or NR<sub>j</sub>; R<sup>1</sup> is  
 20 C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-3</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, or a side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ - amino acid; R<sup>1</sup> is OR<sub>d</sub>, SR<sub>d</sub>, or NR<sub>d</sub>R<sub>e</sub>; R<sup>1</sup> is C<sub>4-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>4-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>4-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>4-6</sub> alkynyl, a side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup>  
 25 taken together are a bivalent moiety; R<sup>2</sup> is C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-3</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl, azido, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkynyl, hydroxyl, or halogen; R<sup>2</sup> is OR<sub>f</sub>, SR<sub>f</sub>, NR<sub>f</sub>R<sub>f</sub>R<sub>g</sub>, -ONR<sub>f</sub>R<sub>g</sub>, -NR<sub>g</sub>(OR<sub>f</sub>), or -NR<sub>g</sub>(RS<sub>f</sub>); R<sup>2</sup> is C<sub>4-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>4-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>4-6</sub> alkenyl, azido, C<sub>4-6</sub> alkynyl, OR<sub>f</sub>, SR<sub>f</sub>, NR<sub>f</sub>R<sub>f</sub>R<sub>g</sub>,  
 30 -ONR<sub>f</sub>R<sub>g</sub>, -NR<sub>g</sub>(OR<sub>f</sub>), or -NR<sub>g</sub>(RS<sub>f</sub>); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> taken together are a bivalent moiety; R<sup>1</sup> is in the alpha configuration; R<sup>1</sup> is in the beta configuration; R<sup>2</sup> is in the alpha configuration; R<sup>2</sup> is in the beta configuration; A<sup>1</sup> is in the alpha configuration; A<sup>2</sup> is in the beta configuration;  
 35 or combinations thereof.

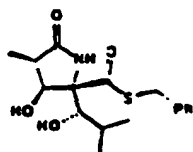
- 28 -

One embodiment of the eighth aspect is a compound where  $A^1$ ,  $A^2$ ,  $R^{12}$ , and  $X^1$  taken together have at least one carbon atom and one heteratom. Further embodiments of the eighth aspect are compounds wherein:  $Z^1$  is NH, or  $NR_a$ ;  $X^1$  is O or S;  $X^1$  is  $CH_2$ , or two singly bonded H;  $R^{12}$  is H,  $C_{1-3}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-3}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-3}$  alkenyl, or  $C_{2-3}$  alkynyl;  $R^{12}$  is  $C_{4-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{4-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{4-6}$  alkenyl, or  $C_{4-6}$  alkynyl; where  $A^1$ ,  $A^2$ ,  $R^{12}$ , and  $X^1$  taken together have at least one carbon atom and one heteratom; where the fragment formula weight of  $A^1$  is greater than the fragment formula weight of  $A^2$  (e.g., by at least 30 or 60); where the fragment formula weight of  $A^2$  is greater than the fragment formula weight of  $A^1$  (e.g., by at least 15 or 50); or combinations thereof.

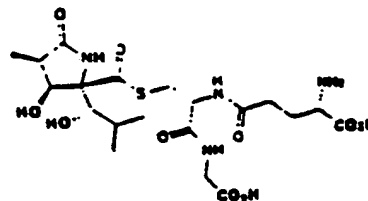
Embodiments of the ninth aspect are compounds wherein  $A^1$  is a side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid; wherein  $A^1$  has a fragment formula weight of at least 50 (e.g., 70, 100, or 120).

Examples of individual compounds described herein are provided in Tables A, B, and C.

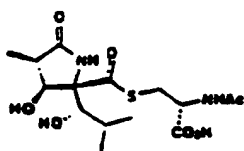
Table A



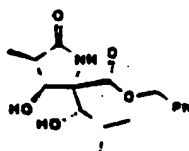
I-1



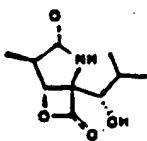
I-2



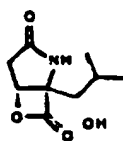
I-3



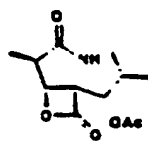
I-4



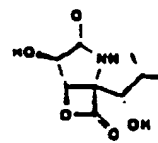
P-1



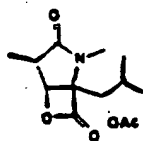
P-2



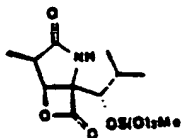
P-3



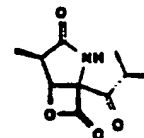
P-4



P-5



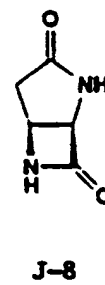
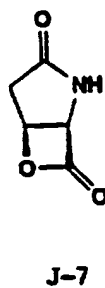
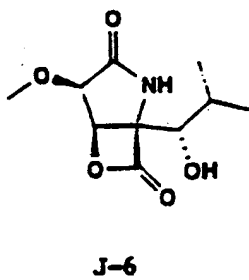
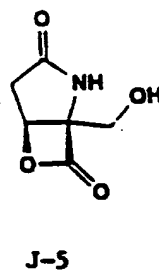
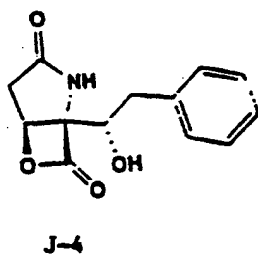
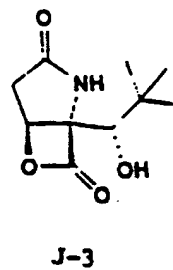
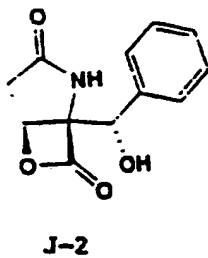
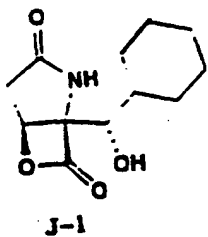
P-6



P-7

- 30 -

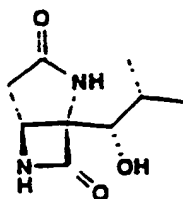
Table B



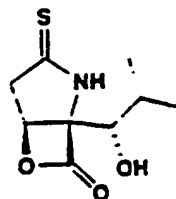


- 31 -

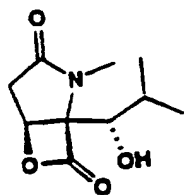
Table C



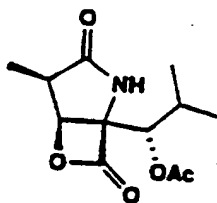
J-9



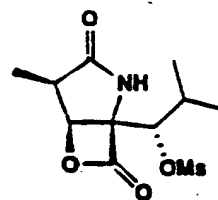
J-10



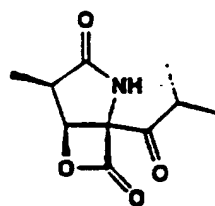
J-11



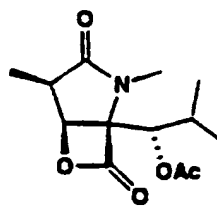
J-12



J-13



J-14



J-15

- 32 -

### Synthesis

The syntheses disclosed herein are organized by structure groups. A person of skill will recognize that compounds of claim 1 are related to the compounds in the compositions of claim 23, and the compounds of claim 5 are related to the compounds in the compositions of claim 30 and so on. The synthesis of the compounds in claims 1-5 rely primarily on the results reported by Uno, et al. in their enantiospecific synthesis of (+)-lactacystin from (R)-glutamate [Uno, et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* (1994) 116:2139]. Note that in all schemes relating to claims 1-5 and 24-32, when a straight line is used to connect A<sup>1</sup> (or anything corresponding to A<sup>1</sup>) to the rest of the molecule, a dashed line should be assumed. The straight line is used simply for clarity. All A<sup>1</sup> are attached to the rest of the molecule on the "alpha," i.e., the bottom, face.) Compound A-1 (Scheme 1) serves as the starting material for all synthetic routes proposed in claim 2, for example. Thus, conversion of A-1 to A-2, in analogy to the above-mentioned work allows for introduction of R<sup>1</sup> via standard alkylation chemistry. In the cases where R<sup>1</sup> is hydroxyl, halide, -SR<sub>d</sub>, or -NR<sub>d</sub>R<sub>e</sub>, wherein R<sub>d</sub> and R<sub>e</sub> each, independently, is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, the electrophile in step b is, respectively, a N-arylsulfonyl-3-phenyloxaziridine [Davis, F.A. et al., *J. Org. Chem.* (1984), 49:3241], a N-halosuccinimide [Stotter, P.A. et al., *J. Org. Chem.* (1973) 38:2576], R<sub>d</sub>S-SR<sub>d</sub> or elemental sulfur [Zoretic, P.A. et al., *J. Org. Chem.* (1976) 41:3587] [Gassman, P.G. et al., *J. Org. Chem.* (1977) 42:3236], a N-arylsulfonylazide (followed by reduction of the azide to the primary amine and elaboration to NR<sub>d</sub>R<sub>e</sub>) [Evans, D.A. et al., *J. Am. Chem.* (1987) 109:6881]. If R<sup>1</sup> is labile or reactive, or both, a protecting group would be introduced at this point and

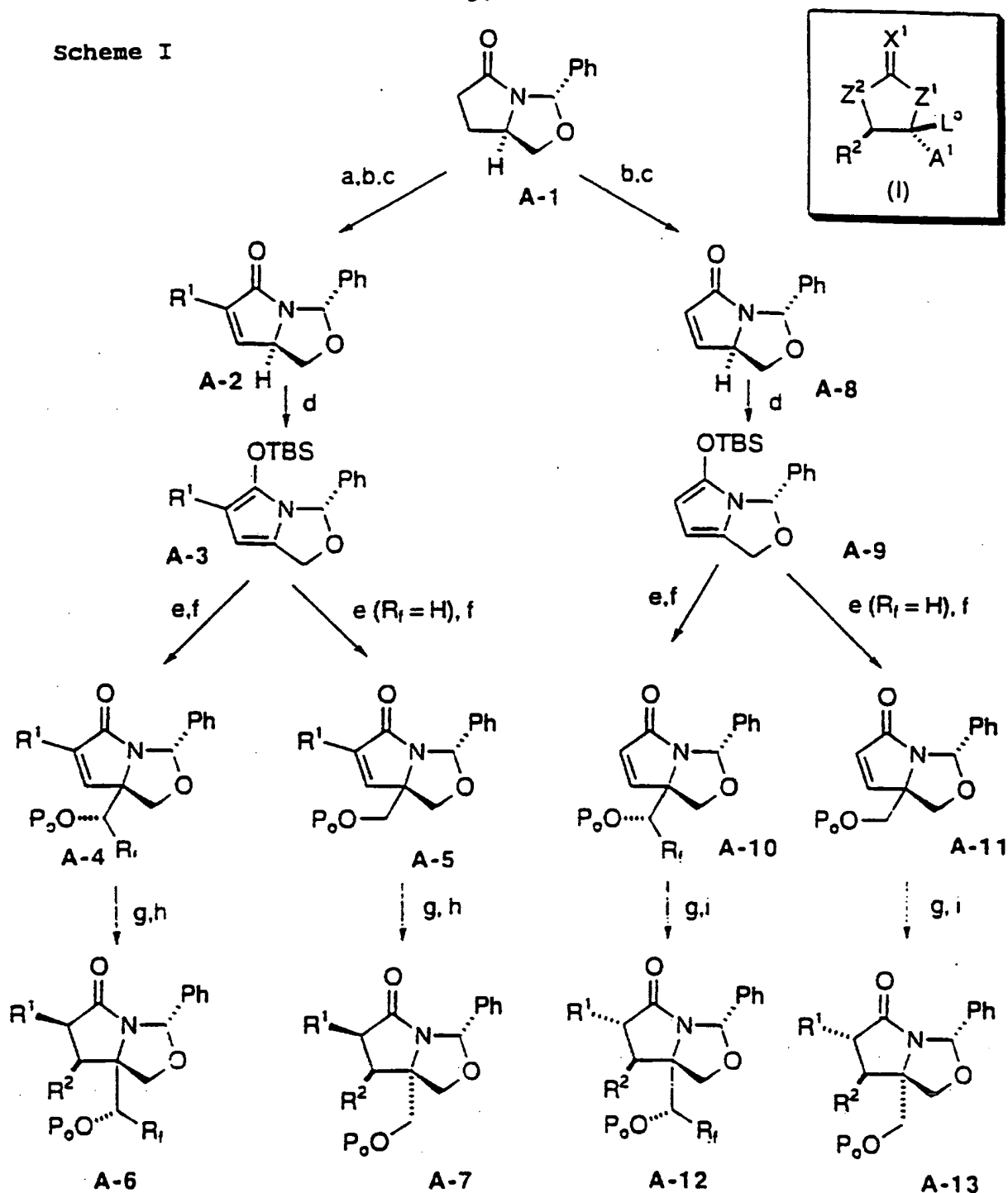
- 33 -

removed at the end of the synthesis. The preparation of compounds of type A-2 is then completed with the two-step (steps b and c) process reported by Uno [Uno, et al., (1994)].

- 5 Introduction of A<sup>1</sup> is the next task. Uno [Uno, et al., (1994)] showed that under Lewis-acid mediated aldol addition conditions, A<sup>1</sup> is introduced with very high facial selectivity with respect to the bicyclic aminoacid derivative A-2. This carbon-carbon bond construction
- 10 allows for the A<sup>1</sup> groups detailed in claim 2. Accordingly, conversion of A-2 to A-3, as described by Uno, followed by treatment of A-3 with SnCl<sub>4</sub> and an aldehyde (R<sub>f</sub>CHO, where R<sub>f</sub> corresponds to H or to the rest of A<sup>1</sup>),
- 15 in diethylether yields aldol products A-4 (or A-5 if R<sub>f</sub> is H), following suitable protection of the hydroxyl group with a group designated here as P<sub>o</sub>. [Greene and Wuts, et al., *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, 2nd ed., (1991)].

- 34 -

Scheme I



a) LDA; electrophile b) LDA; PhSeBr c) O<sub>3</sub>; pyridine d) TBSOTf, 2,6-lutidine e) R<sub>f</sub>CHO, SnCl<sub>4</sub>, Et<sub>2</sub>O f) Protect hydroxyl as P<sub>2</sub>O g) Nucleophile corresponding to R<sup>2</sup> h) acidic water i) Electrophile corresponding to R<sup>1</sup>

- 35 -

Introduction of  $R^2$  by a stereoselective, conjugate nucleophilic addition to the unsaturated carbonyl system of A-4 or A-5, followed by quenching of the resulting enolate with acidic water gives access to compounds A-6 and A-7, respectively. This process is analogous to the "three-component coupling" strategy for prostaglandin synthesis of [Suzuki, et al. (1988)]. In this case, the three components are A-4 (or A-5),  $R^2$ , and a proton. The diastereomers shown for A-6 and A-7 are predicted to be the major ones based on several facts. The Uno synthesis [Uno, H., et al., (1994)] used an  $OsO_4$ -catalyzed dihydroxylation of a compound similar to A-4 ( $R^1$  = methyl,  $R_f$  = iso-propyl) to introduce a hydroxyl group corresponding to  $R^2$ . This reaction proceeded with complete facial selectivity. Thus, in general, groups with appropriate reactivity (nucleophiles or electrophiles) similarly approach preferentially the "beta" face (from the top) of A-4 or A-5.

Quenching of the enolate with acidic water proceeds stereoselectively. In Suzuki's three-component coupling strategy, [Suzuki, et al., (1988)] the nucleophile and electrophile are introduced trans to each other. In our case,  $R^2$  and the proton are introduced trans to each other. In the event that compounds in which  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are trans to each other are desired, as depicted in compounds A-12 and A-13, a similar strategy has been devised.

The basic strategy has one exception to that detailed above: The order of introduction of  $R^1$  and proton at the carbon alpha to the carbonyl is reversed. Thus, conversion of A-1 to A-9 is carried out using the same procedures as those for the preparation of A-3, omitting the alkylation step (step a). Elaboration of A-9 to A-10 and A-11 utilizes the same conditions as those which afford A-4 and A-5. Addition of  $R^2$  still occurs from the top face, but the quenching step with an

- 36 -

electrophile corresponding to  $R^1$  now gives a *trans* relationship of  $R^1$  and  $R^2$ , as shown in compounds A-12 and A-13.

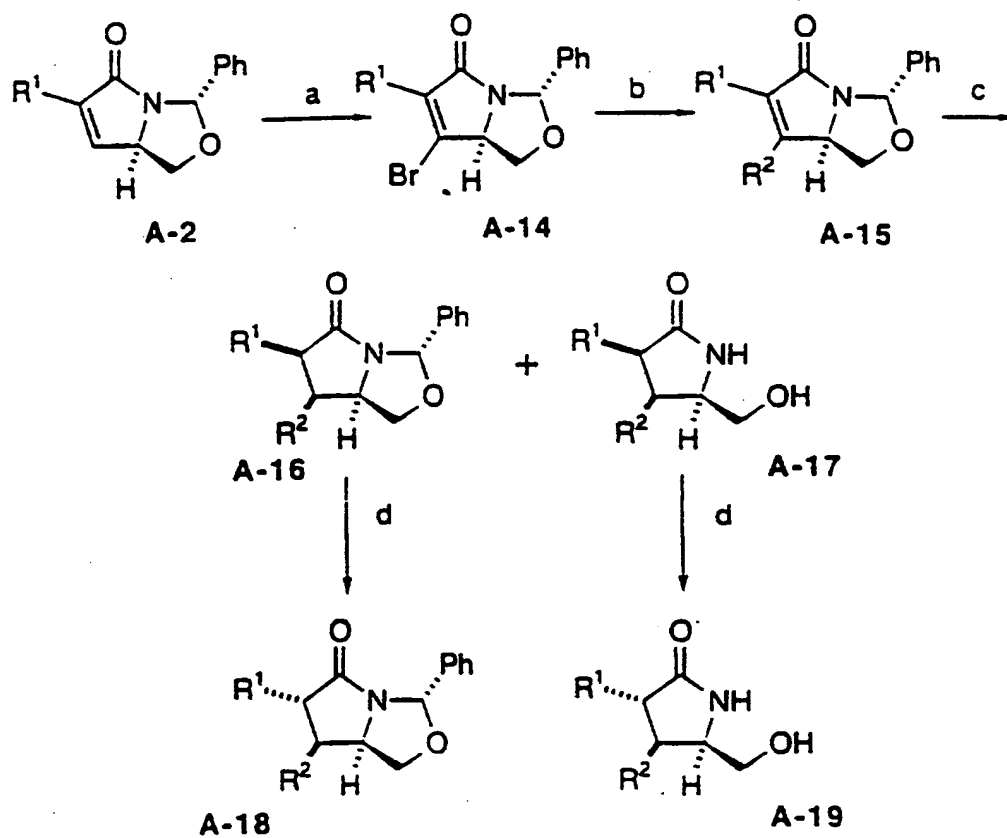
Another advantage of these approaches to A-6, A-7, A-12, and A-13 is as follows. Should the quenching step introduce the electrophile (proton or  $R^1$ ) *cis* to  $R^2$  (opposite that predicted above), then one still has stereospecific routes to the desired compounds, except that A-4 and A-5 give A-12 and A-13, respectively, and A-10 and A-11 give A-6 and A-7.

Compounds in which  $A^1$  is H are prepared by a different strategy (Scheme 2). For example, it has been shown that when  $A^1$  is H, nucleophiles [Hanessian, et al., Synlett (1991) 10:222] and electrophiles [Griffart-Brunet, et al., Tet. Lett. (1991) 35:119] approach from the bottom face, *cis* to the hydrogen at  $A^1$ . Thus, the key to our strategy above is that the stereoselectivity of addition is reversed when  $A^1$  is not H. The rapid preparation described below of compounds in which  $A^1$  is H takes advantage of this reversal of stereoselectivity.

Thus, bromination of A-2 by standard methods [Caine, et al., J. Org. Chem. (1985) 50:2195] gives A-14, which is utilized in conjugate addition-elimination procedures to give compounds of type A-15. Since  $A^1$  is H, catalytic hydrogenation of the olefin should install  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  in the desired *cis* configuration shown in compound A-16. Cleavage of the *N,O*-aminal may occur under such conditions, giving compound A-17. Such an occurrence is not disadvantageous since such a deprotection is the next step in the synthesis anyway. Compounds A-18 and A-19 are accessed by base-catalyzed epimerization of A-16 and A-17, respectively.

- 37 -

Scheme 2



a) Br<sub>2</sub>, Et<sub>3</sub>N b) Nucleophile corresponding to R<sup>2</sup>; H<sub>3</sub>O<sup>+</sup> c) H<sub>2</sub>, Pd/C d) DBU, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>

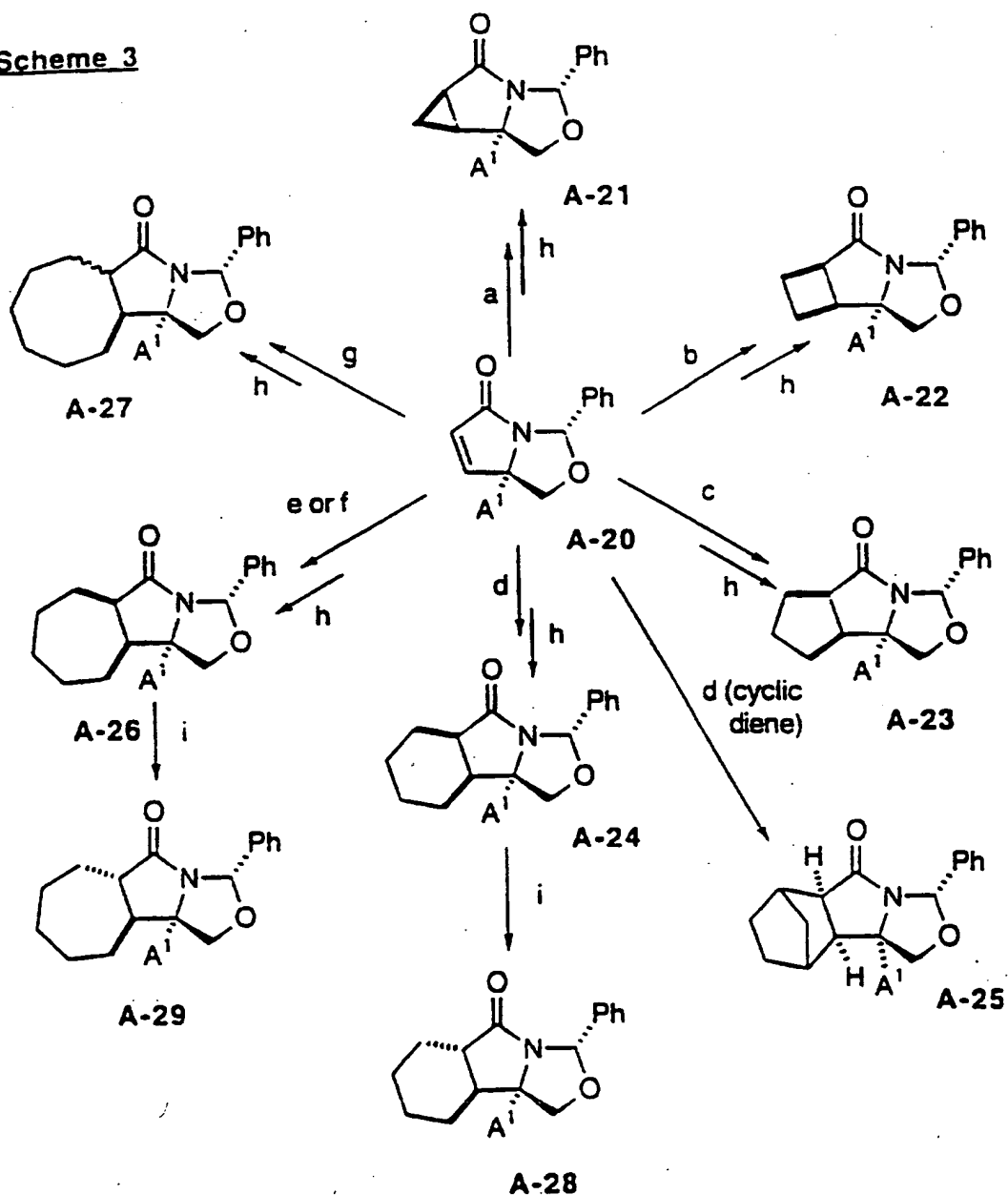
- 38 -

The above strategies allow for the preparation of compounds containing any and all  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  described in claims 2 and 25, with one exception: compounds where an additional ring is fused to the lactam ring

5 (specifically, compounds in which  $R^1$  is taken together with  $R^2$ , giving a bivalent moiety which forms a  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or  $C_{6-12}$  aryl). Their preparation will be discussed below (Schemes 3 and 4). Note that while only carbocyclic  
10 systems are depicted in Schemes 3 and 4, both the alicyclic and heterocyclic (aromatic and non-aromatic in both cases) classes of compounds can be prepared in this manner by choice of the appropriate reagents. Further, all substitution patterns on these rings that are  
15 normally accessible by such processes are accessible by the methods proposed below. The simplest carbocyclic variants are shown for clarity and to illustrate the general strategy to these compounds.

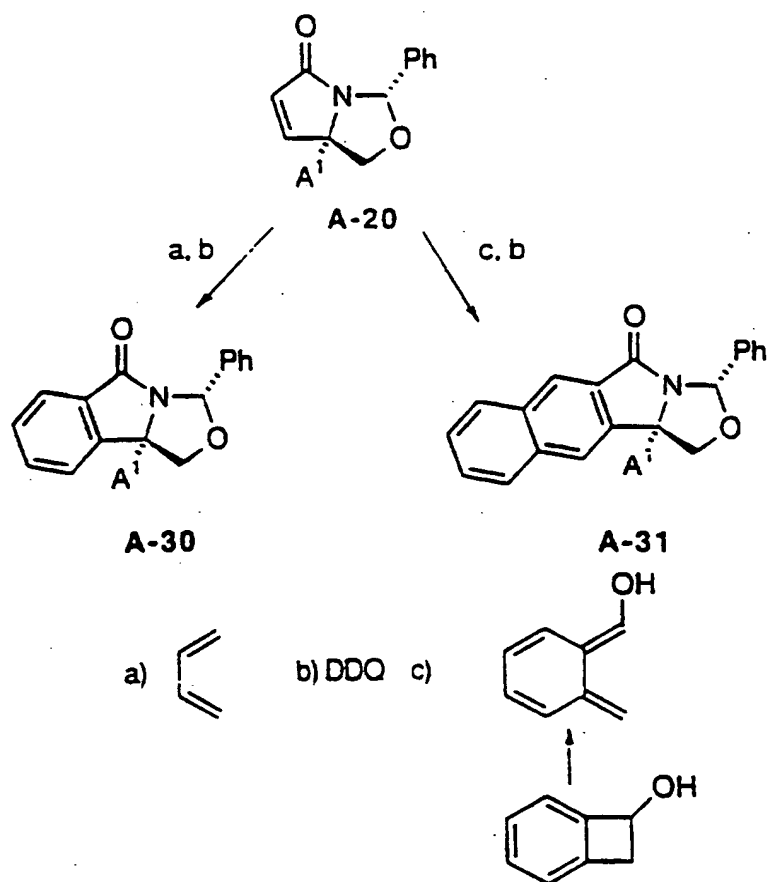
The synthesis of these compounds relies on the  
20 diverse chemistry of cycloaddition [Carruthers, et al., *Cycloaddition Reactions in Organic Synthesis* (1990) and J. March, *Advanced Organic Chemistry*, (1992) pp. 826-877] to alpha-beta unsaturated olefins. Thus, as shown in Scheme 3, [1+2] processes (e.g. diazoinsertion,  
25 cyclopropanation, epoxidation, and aziridination) with compound A-20 (see Scheme 1 for preparation of compounds of this type, e.g. A-10 and A-11) gives access to compounds of type A-21. Compounds of type A-22 are prepared with a variety of [2+2] cycloaddition processes  
30 (e.g. photocycloadditions and ketene additions). 1,3-Dipolar cycloaddition chemistry ([3+2] cycloaddition reagents, such as nitrile oxides and azomethine ylides) prepares a wide variety compounds of the type A-23. The preparation of compounds of type A-24 is perhaps the most  
35 flexible and far-reaching of the cycloaddition chemistry



**Scheme 3**

a) epoxidation, Simmons-Smith, aziridination, etc. b) photocycloaddition, ketene addition, etc. c) nitride oxide, azomethine ylides, other [3+2] cycloadditions d) Diels-Alder cycloadditions, etc. e) [5+2] cycloadditions f) LG-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>5</sub>-Nu g) LG-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>5</sub>-Nu h) "functional group manipulation" i) DBU, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>

Scheme 4



- 41 -

because it relies on the Diels-Alder reaction, one of the most utilized and studied reactions in all of organic chemistry. The variety of compounds of type A-24 that are prepared by this method is far too great to detail; [Carruthers, (1990)] however, notably, bridged compounds (type A-25) are prepared by this method. [5+2] cycloadditions to give A-26 are less common, but some intriguing examples have been reported. [Wender, et al., *J. Org. Chem.* (1991) 56:6267 and Wender, et al., *Tet. Lett.* (1992) 32:6115].

While all these procedures introduce R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> cis to each other, base-catalyzed epimerization in the cases of A-24 and A-26 gives access to the trans-fused versions of these compounds, A-28 and A-29, respectively. (A-21, A-22, A-23, and A-25 can not be epimerized in this fashion, as these trans-fused rings suffer from much more ring strain than do the cis-fused systems.)

Cycloheptyl (A-26) and cyclooctyl (A-27) compounds are prepared with a slightly different process, one that is akin to that shown in Scheme 1. Fundamentally, one adds an nucleophile (abbreviated as "Nu") to A-20 which also has a leaving group (abbreviated as "LG") attached to the other end of the incoming nucleophile, separated by the necessary number of atoms (5 in the case of A-26, 6 in the case of A-27). Thus, following the addition of the nucleophile, the resulting enolate displaces the leaving group, forming the ring. Alternatively, such a process is done stepwise in order to minimize undesired intramolecular side reactions of the nucleophile and electrophile. These and other methods for making cycloheptyl and cyclooctyl compounds from alpha-beta unsaturated carbonyl compounds have been reviewed in the chemical literature. [Petasis, N.A., et al., *Tetrahedron* (1992) 48:5757].

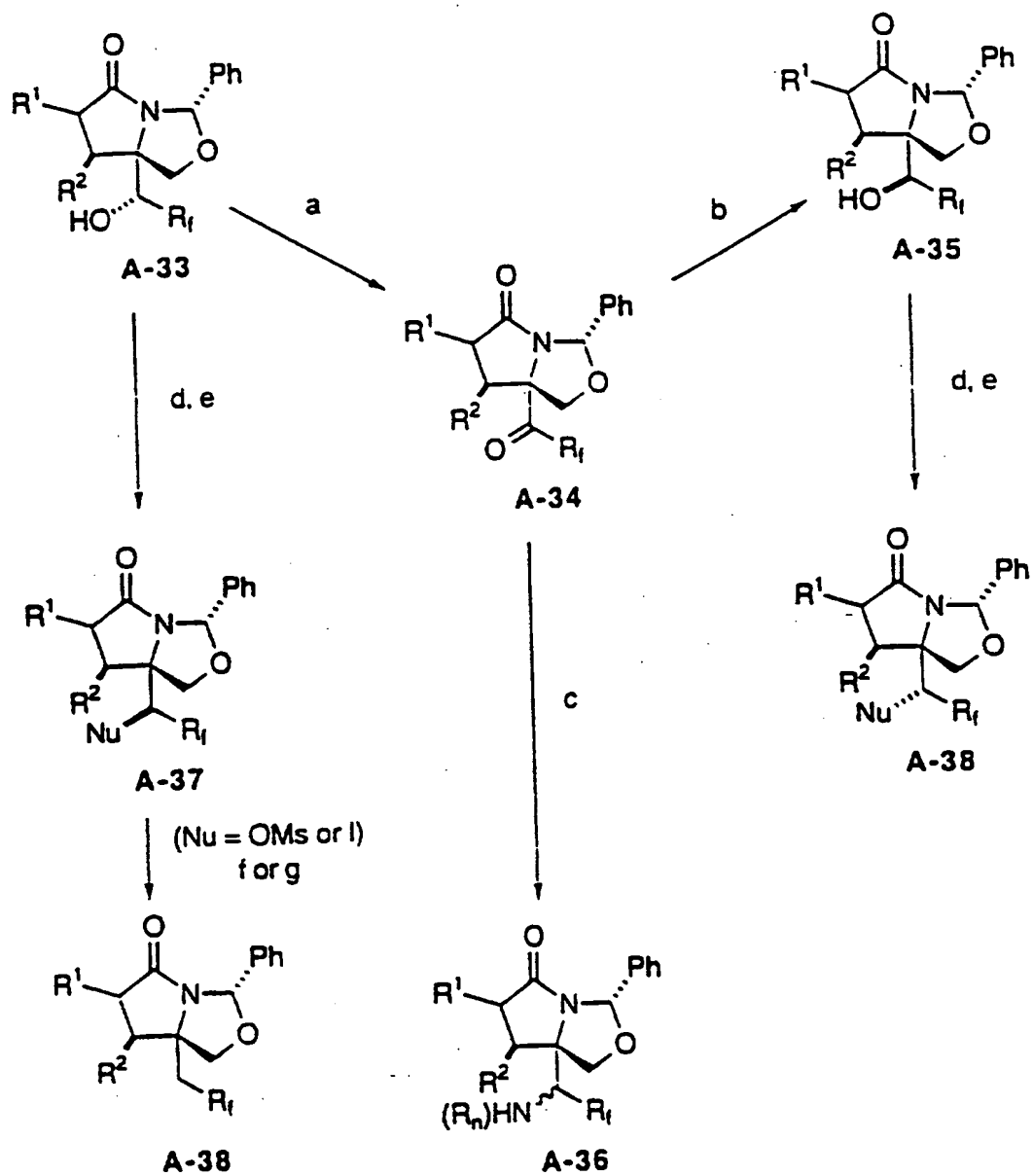
- 42 -

Aryl and heteroaryl compounds (e.g. compounds A-30 and A-31, Scheme 4) are prepared by [4+2] cycloaddition chemistry, followed by oxidation of the resultant cycloalkene or heterocycloalkene with  
5 dichlorodicyanoquinone (DDQ). [Pizey, N., *Synth. Reagents* (1977) 3:193-225]. In the case of compounds of type A-31, other types of dienes that are utilized are the hydroxyorthoxylylenes, formed by the ring opening reaction of hydroxybenzocyclobutenes. [Arnold, B.J., et  
10 al., *J. Chem. Soc.*, (1974) 409-415].

Thus, having prepared all the variations of  $R^1$  and  $R^2$ , we turn now to the elaboration of these compounds to include all of the variations of  $A^1$  (Scheme 5).

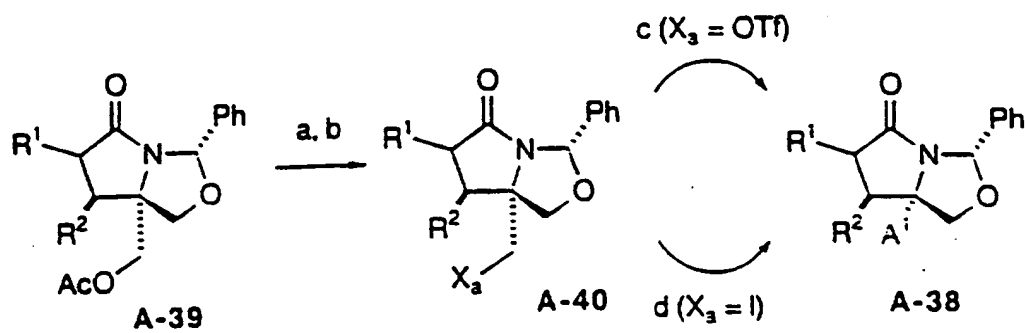
Based on the results of [Uno, et al., (1994)] and as  
15 shown in Scheme 1, Lewis-acid catalyzed aldol additions of A-3 to  $R_fCHO$ , followed by further elaboration, provide compounds of the type A-33 (Scheme 5) with the stereocenters in the configurations shown, including both configurations of  $R^1$ . (A straight bond (i.e. neither  
20 bold or dashed) is shown here to represent both diastereomers at this position.) Here we will focus on the stereochemistry of the secondary hydroxyl that is included in  $A^1$ , and related derivatives. While modification of conditions in the aldol addition (Scheme  
25 1) reaction can provide the other diastereomer at this position, another method of inverting this center is to first oxidize to the ketone under standard conditions (e.g. Swern, Dess-Martin periodinane, etc.) and then reduce with the appropriate reducing agent (e.g.  $NaBH_4$ ,  
30 etc.) whose identity is determined by screening a number of reductants. This two-step procedure provides compounds of type A-35. Analogously, reductive amination of ketone A-34 with an amine or hydroxylamine (represented in Scheme 5 as  $R_nNH_2$ ) and sodium  
35 cyanoborohydride ( $NaCNBH_3$ ) provides compounds of type

Scheme 5



a) Dess-Martin periodinane b)  $\text{NaBH}_4$ , e.g. c)  $\text{R}_n\text{NH}_2$ ,  $\text{NaCNBH}_3$   
 d)  $\text{MsCl}$ ,  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$  e) Nucleophile f)  $\text{LiEt}_3\text{BH}$  g)  $\text{Zn}$ ,  $\text{HCl}$

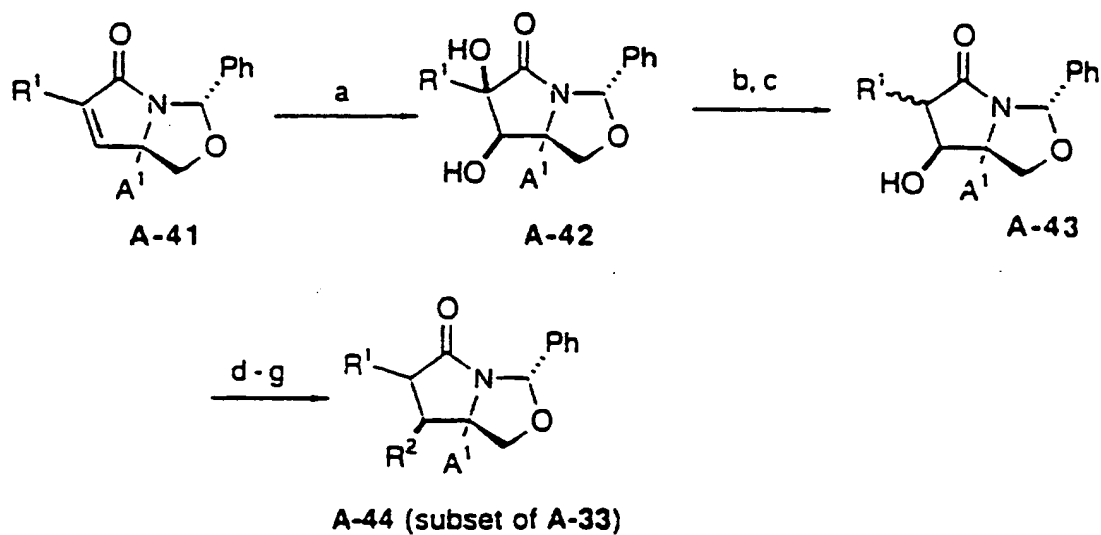
Scheme 6



a)  $\text{LiOH}$ ,  $\text{THF}$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  b)  $\text{Ti}_2\text{O}$ , 2,6-di-*tert*-butylpyridine or  $\text{I}_2$ ,  $\text{PPh}_3$ , imidazole  
 c) Nucleophile d) metal-halogen exchange; electrophile

- 45 -

Scheme 7



a)  $\text{OsO}_4$ , NMO, water, acetone b) TCDI c)  $\text{Bu}_3\text{SnH}$ , AIBN d) separate diastereomers  
 e) DEAD,  $\text{Ph}_3\text{P}$ , acetic acid f) conversion of acetate to leaving group g) nucleophile  
 corresponding to  $\text{R}^2$

- 46 -

A-36. The sense of stereochemical induction in this step can be altered by using a different reducing agent. Alternatively, by first preparing the methanesulfonate ester ("mesylate") of A-33 or A-35, and then displacing  
5 the mesylate with a nucleophile (e.g.  $\text{RNH}_2$ ,  $\text{RS}^-$ ,  $\text{RO}^-$ , halide, hydroxylamine, Grignard reagents, etc.) one obtains a wide variety of  $\text{A}^1$  derivatives with complete control of stereochemistry at the carbon corresponding to the secondary hydroxyl in A-33. Reduction of the  
10 mesylate (with lithium triethylborohydride ( $\text{LiEt}_3\text{BH}$ )) or of a halide (with, e.g., zinc in hydrochloric acid) provides compounds of the type A-38.

Another method to produce the various  $\text{A}^1$  derivatives is depicted in Scheme 6. Compounds of the type A-39,  
15 which are prepared according to Scheme 1, are converted to those of type A-40 where  $\text{X}_a$  is a halide or trifluoromethanesulfonate ester ("triflate"), for example, using standard functional group manipulation. Displacement of these leaving groups with nucleophiles  
20 gives another method for the preparation of compounds of type A-38. Subjecting iodide A-40 ( $\text{X}_a$  is I) to metal-halogen exchange conditions (e.g. activated Mg metal or tert-butyllithium) provides nucleophiles to which a variety of nucleophiles can be added, providing  
25 yet another route to compounds of type A-38.

Another strategy for the preparation of a subset of compounds of type 33 is worth noting (Scheme 7). This strategy allows for the preparation of compounds of type A-33 for all  $\text{R}^2$  discussed above and for all  $\text{R}^1$  other than  
30 hydroxyl, halide,  $-\text{SR}_d$ ,  $-\text{NR}_d\text{R}_e$ . Compounds of the type A-4, A-5, A-10, and A-11 as shown in Scheme 1 (represented as compound A-41 in Scheme 7), in which  $\text{R}^1$  is attached to the lactam ring with a carbon-carbon bond, can be dihydroxylated to give compounds of type A-42, in which  
35 the hydroxyl groups have been added to the top face



- 47 -

exclusively. [Uno, et al., (1994)] (The reasons for this stereoselectivity have been discussed above.) Following the procedure of [Uno, et al., 1994)] the tertiary hydroxyl can be removed selectively, yielding a mixture  
5 of R<sup>1</sup> diastereomers A-43, which can be separated by a variety of chromatographic methods. Mitsunobu inversion of the secondary hydroxyl, followed by displacement of a suitably derived leaving group by any nucleophile corresponding to R<sup>2</sup> (e.g. hydroxide, alkoxide, sulfide,  
10 Grignard reagents, amine, halide, etc.) gives compounds of the type A-44, which are a subset of compounds of the type A-33, and can therefore be elaborated into their corresponding A<sup>1</sup> derivatives as described above.

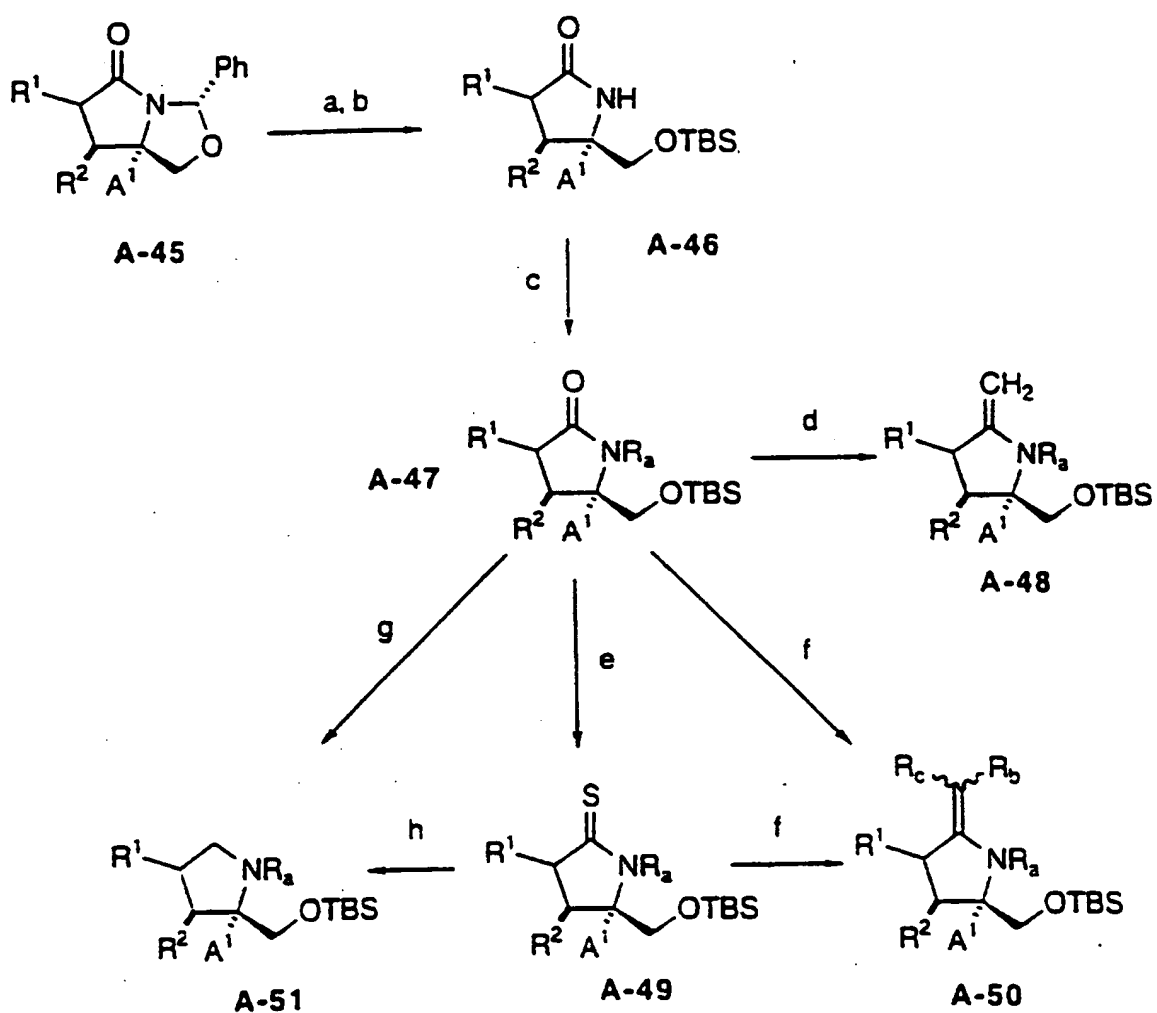
Thus, having provided viable routes to all  
15 variations of R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, and now A<sup>1</sup> in claims 2 and 25, we now turn our attention to the installation of X<sup>1</sup>, L<sup>1</sup>, and X<sup>2</sup> (Scheme 8).

The compound of general structure A-45 can be converted to A-46 in a two-step process involving first  
20 catalytic hydrogenolysis or mild acidic hydrolysis [Corey, E.J., et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* (1992a), 114:10677] and then protection of the primary hydroxyl group as its tert-butyldimethylsilyl (TBS) ether under standard conditions. [Corey, E.J. and Venkateswarlu, A.,  
25 *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* (1972), 94:6190] N-Alkylation of the amide provides access to compounds A-47. [Challis, N., *The Chemistry of Amides*, (1970) 734-754]. (In the cases where R<sub>p</sub> is desired to be H, the amide can be blocked with a suitable protecting group that will be removed at  
30 the end of the synthesis. [Greene, T.W., et al., *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis* (1991)]).

Enamine A-48 can be prepared from A-47 under Tebbe olefination conditions. [Pine, S.H., et al., *J. Org. Chem.* (1985) 50:1212]. Thioamide A-49 can be prepared by  
35 treatment of A-47 with bis(tricyclohexyltin)sulfide and

- 48 -

Scheme 8

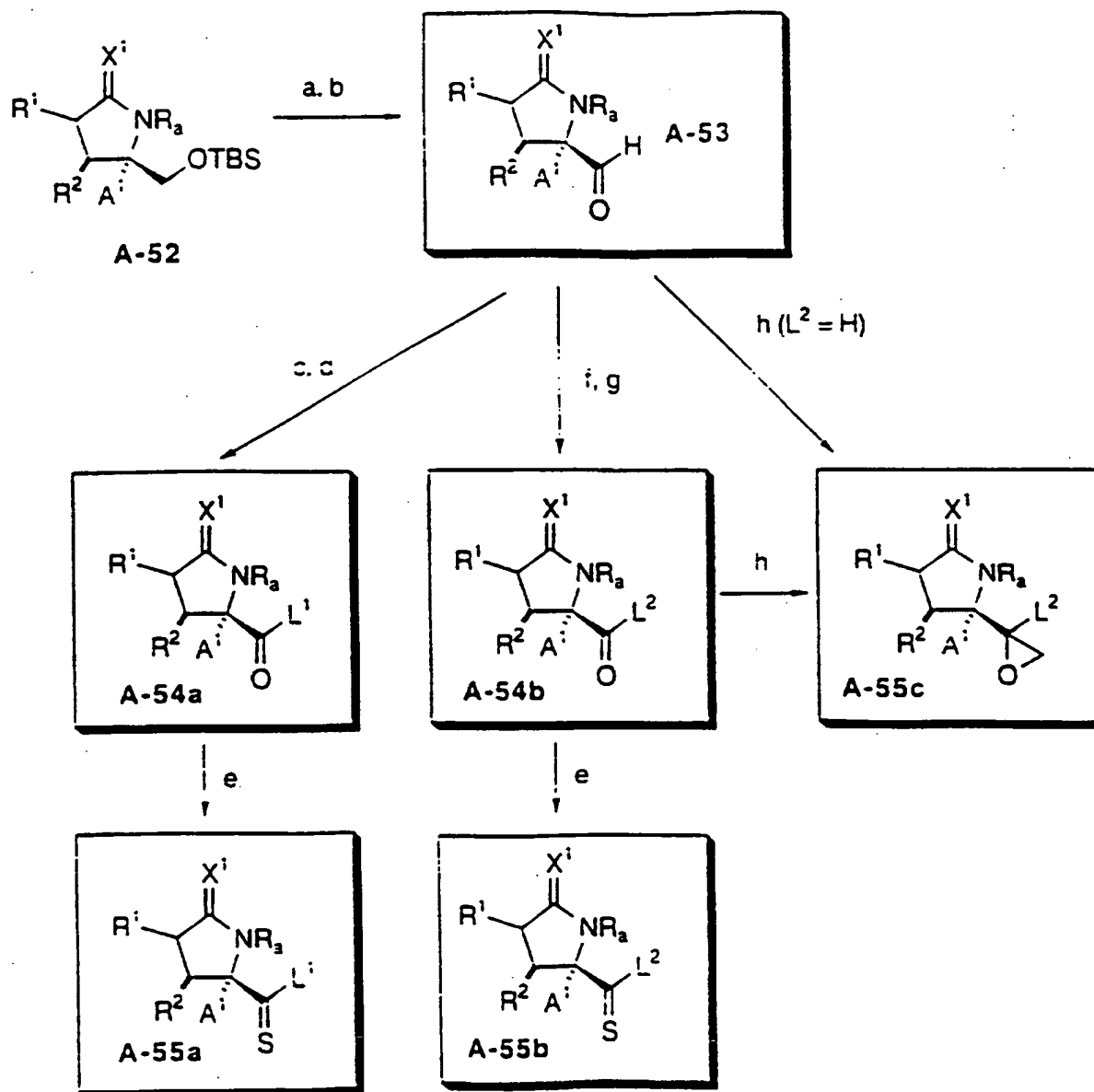


a) H<sub>2</sub>, Pd/C, H<sup>+</sup> or HS(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>SH, HCl, CF<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH b) TBS-Cl, imidazole, DMF

c) NaH, electrophile corresponding to R<sub>a</sub>, DMF d) Tebbe olefination

e) ((cyclohexyl)<sub>3</sub>Sn)<sub>2</sub>S, BCl<sub>3</sub> f) R<sub>c</sub>R<sub>b</sub>C(H)(MgBr); H<sup>+</sup> g) LiAlH<sub>4</sub>, Et<sub>2</sub>O h) Raney Ni

Scheme 9



a) TBAF, THF or HF, CH<sub>3</sub>CN or 1% HCl, MeOH b) (COCl)<sub>2</sub>, DMSO, Et<sub>3</sub>N, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>  
 c) NaClO<sub>2</sub>, pH 7, THF d) L<sup>1</sup>-H, BOP-Cl e) Lawesson's reagent f) Nucleophile  
 corresponding to L<sup>2</sup> g) Dess-Martin periodinane h) Me<sub>2</sub>(S<sup>-</sup>)(O)CH<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup>

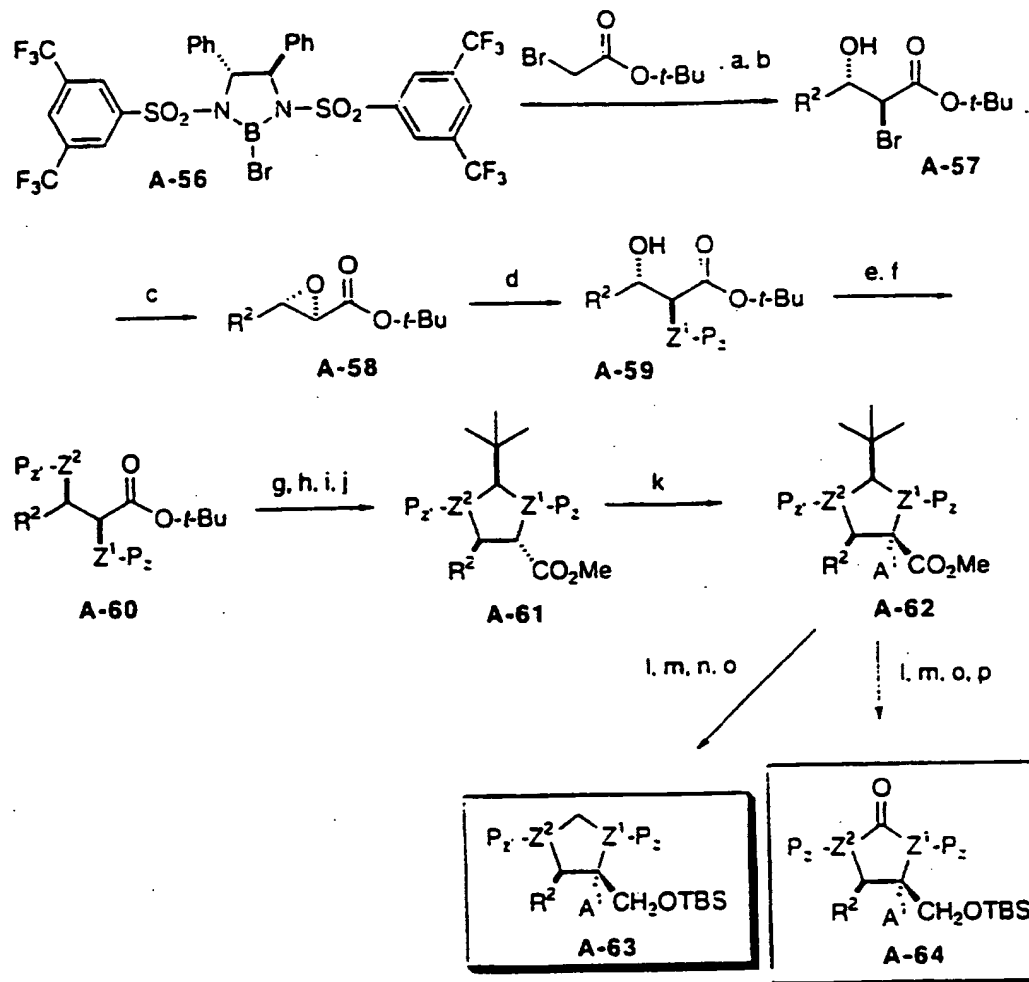
- 50 -

boron trichloride. [Steliou, K., et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, (1982) 104:3104]. Substituted enamines A-50 can be prepared by addition of the appropriate Grignard reagent or alkyllithium to A-47 or A-49, followed by acidic hydrolysis, and separation of the E and Z olefin isomers. [Aguerro, A., et al., *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* (1986) 531 and Schrock, R.R., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, (1976) 98:5399, and Hansen, C., *J. Org. Chem.* (1973) 38:3074]. Pyrrolidines of type 51 can be prepared by reduction of A-47 with lithium aluminum hydride [March, J., *Advanced Organic Chemistry* (1992) 826-877 and Gaylord, J., *Reduction With Complex Metal Hydrides* (1956)] 544-636] or alternatively by reduction of A-49 with Raney nickel. [Belen'kii, W., *Chemistry of Organosulfur Compounds* 91990) 193-228].

Taken together, these procedures constitute a synthesis of compounds of the general structure A-52, which are converted to A-53 following, for example, the procedure of Uno, et al. [Uno, H., et al., (1994)] (Scheme 9). Compounds A-53 are converted to analogues A-54a via oxidation to the acid and coupling with  $L^1$  (all of which can be prepared by standard methods) under the conditions utilized by Corey and Reichard [Corey, E.J., et al., (1992a)]. Sulfurization of these compounds with Lawesson's reagent [Cava, M.P., et al., *Tetrahedron* (1985) 41:5061] gives thiono analogues A-55a. Compounds A-54b are prepared via addition of a nucleophile (e.g.  $CF_3$ ) [Francese, C., et al., *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun* (1987) 642], corresponding to  $L^2$  to the aldehydes A-54b followed by oxidation of the alcohol with Dess-Martin periodinane. [Linderman, R.J., et al., *Tet. Lett.* (1987) 28:4259]. Sulfurization of these compounds with Lawesson's reagent [Cava, M.P., et al., (1985)] gives thiono analogues A-55b. Epoxides of the type A-55c are prepared from A-53 or A-54b by the method of Johnson

- 51 -

Scheme 10



- a)  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$ , toluene b)  $\text{R}_2\text{CHO}$  c)  $\text{K}_2\text{CO}_3$ ,  $\text{MeOH}$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  d) nucleophile corresponding to  $\text{Z}^1$ : protection of  $\text{Z}^1$ , if necessary e)  $\text{TsCl}$ , pyridine f) nucleophile corresponding to  $\text{Z}^2$ : protection of  $\text{Z}^2$ , if necessary g) deprotect  $\text{P}_1$  and  $\text{P}_2$ , if necessary h)  $\text{MeSO}_3\text{H}$ , toluene i)  $\text{CH}_2\text{N}_2$  j)  $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CCHO}$ , acid k)  $\text{LiHMDS}$ : electrophile corresponding to  $\text{A}^1$  l)  $\text{LiAlH}_4$  m)  $\text{TBS-Cl}$ , imidazole,  $\text{DMF}$  n) acidic water o)  $\text{HCHO}$ , acid p)  $\text{CDI}$



- 53 -

11). Compounds of the type A-65 are prepared from A-64 under Tebbe olefination conditions. [Pine, S.H., et al., (1985)]. Compounds of the type A-66 are prepared by treatment of A-64 with bis(tricyclohexyltin)sulfide and boron trichloride. [Steliou, K., et al., (1982)]. Compounds of the type A-67 are prepared by addition of the appropriate Grignard reagent or alkyllithium to A-64 or A-66, followed by acidic hydrolysis, and separation of the E and Z olefin isomers. [Aguerro, A., et al., (1986) and Schrock, R.R., (1976), and Hansen, C., et al., (1973)]. Compounds of the type A-63, prepared in Scheme 10, are also prepared by reduction of A-64 with lithium aluminum hydride [March, J., (1992), and Gaylord, J. (1956)] or alternatively by reduction of A-66 with Raney nickel. [Belen'kii, W., (1990)].

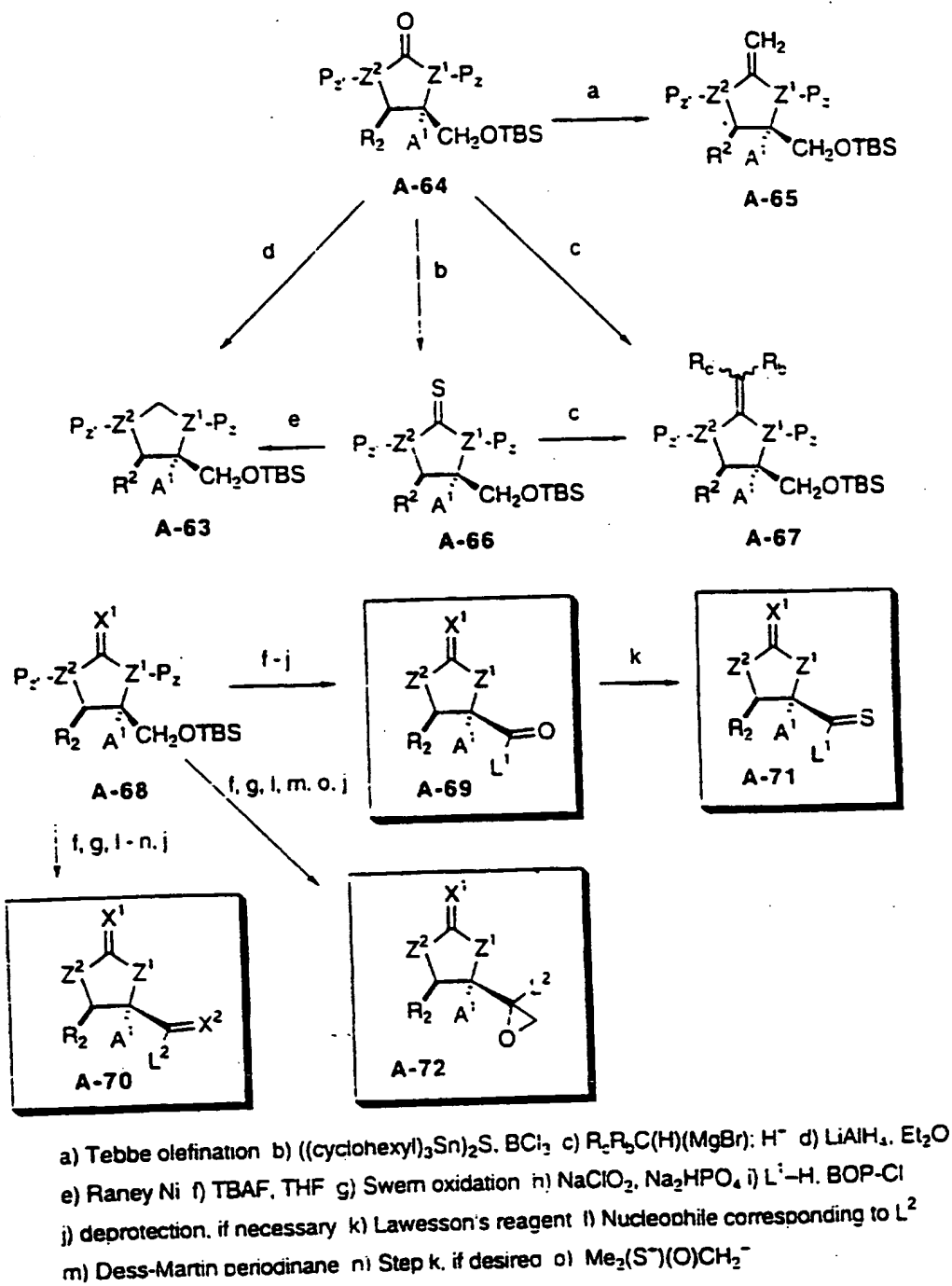
Taken together, compounds of the type A-63, A-64, A-65, A-66, and A-67 are of the general class A-68, which are converted the general class of lactacystin analogues A-69 by fluoride deprotection of the TBS ether, oxidation of the resulting primary alcohol to the carboxylic acid, via the aldehyde analogues, in, for example, the two-step process shown, and coupling with L<sup>1</sup> using the method of Corey and Reichard, [Corey, E.J., et al., (1992a)] and removal of the protecting groups on Z<sup>1</sup> and Z<sup>2</sup> (if necessary). Lactacystin analogues A-71 are prepared by treating A-69 with Lawesson's reagent [Cava, M.P., et al., (1985)]. Analogues A-70 are also prepared from A-68 by fluoride deprotection of the TBS ether, oxidation of the resulting primary alcohol to the aldehyde, addition of nucleophile (e.g., CF<sub>3</sub>) [Francese, C. et al. 1987, supra] Dess-Martin periodinane oxidation, sulfurization with Lawesson's reagent (if desired) [Cava, M.P., 1985)], and deprotection of Z<sup>2</sup> and Z<sup>2</sup>, if necessary. Epoxides of the type A-72 are also prepared from A-68 by fluoride deprotection of the TBS ether, oxidation of the

**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**



- 54 -

Scheme 11



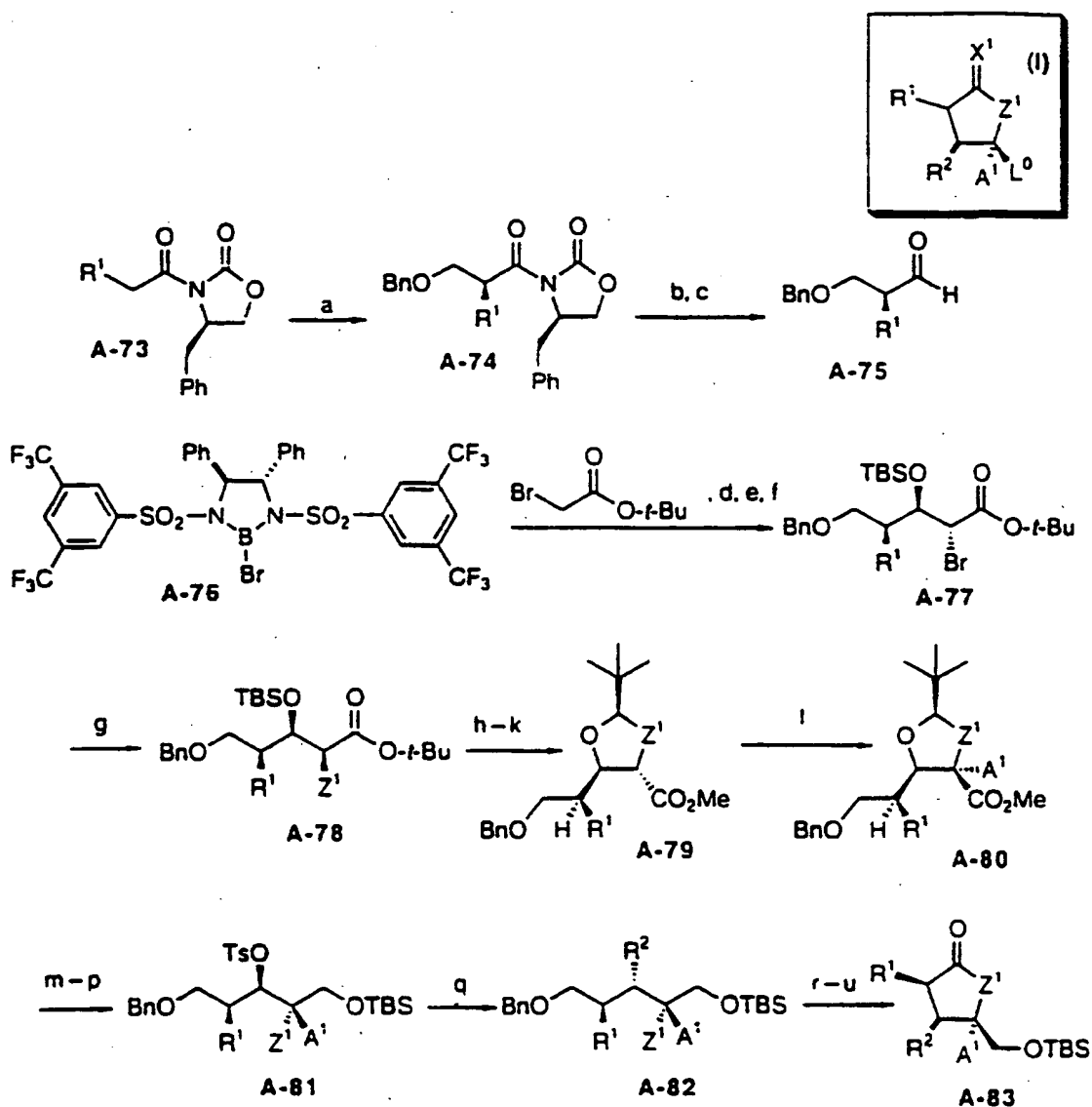
- 55 -

resulting primary alcohol to the aldehyde, addition of a nucleophile corresponding to  $L^2$ , Dess-Martin periodinane oxidation, addition of dimethyloxosulfonium methylide, and deprotection of  $Z^1$  and  $Z^2$  (if necessary). Thus, the above strategy prepares all the compounds in claims 4 and 31.

The preparation of the compounds covered by claim 1 relies primarily on the methods of Evans and of Corey. Thus, as shown in Scheme 12, chiral oxazolidinones of the type A-73 are enolized and alkylated with benzyloxy-bromomethane, thereby installing  $R^1$ . [Evans, D.A., et al. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, (1982) 104:1737]. (Only one configuration of  $R^1$  is obtained in the reaction. The other configuration of  $R^1$  is obtained by using the opposite enantiomer of the chiral oxazolidinone.) Conversion of A-74 to aldehydes of the type A-75, and chiral, boron-mediated (using A-76) aldol condensation with *tert*-butylbromoacetate gives [Corey, E.J., et al., (1992b)] a secondary alcohol that is protected as the *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl (TBS) ether to give compounds of the type A-77. Displacement of the bromide with a nucleophile [Corey, E.J., et al. (1992b)] corresponding to  $Z^1$  yields A-78, which can be converted to compounds of the type A-79. As discussed above regarding claim 4, such compounds can be enolized and alkylated stereospecifically with electrophiles corresponding to  $A^1$ , giving A-80. Standard functional group manipulation yields tosylates of the type A-81. Displacement of the tosylate with a nucleophile corresponding to  $R^2$ , [Hanessian, S., et al., *J. Org. Chem.* (1989) 54:5831] gives compounds of the type A-82, the primary alcohol of which is deprotected via, for example, catalytic hydrogenolysis, and cyclized to compounds A-83 after oxidation of the primary alcohol to the carboxylic acid.

- 56 -

Scheme 12



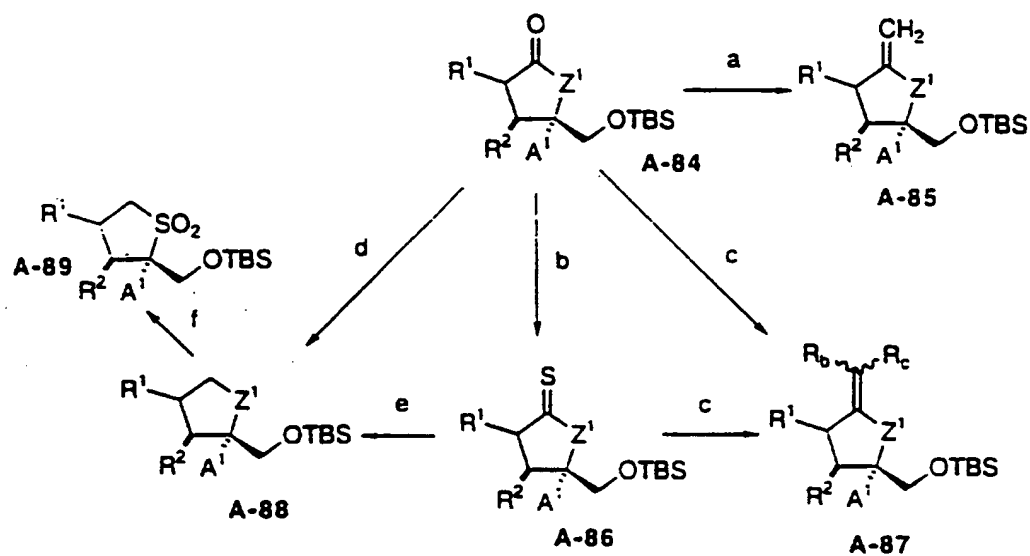
a) LDA;  $\text{BnOCH}_2\text{Br}$  b)  $\text{LiAlH}_4$  c) Swern Oxidation d)  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$ , toluene e) A-75 f) TBS-Cl, imidazole, DMF g) Nucleophile corresponding to  $\text{Z}^1$  h)  $\text{MeSO}_3\text{H}$  i)  $\text{CH}_2\text{N}_2$  j) TBAF, THF k)  $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CCHO}$ , acid catalyst l) LiHMDS, electrophile corresponding to  $\text{A}^1$  m)  $\text{LiAlH}_4$  n) TBS-Cl, imidazole, DMF o) deprotection p) TsCl, pyridine q) Nucleophile corresponding to  $\text{R}^2$  r)  $\text{H}_2$ , Pd/C s) oxidation t) deprotect  $\text{Z}^1$ , if necessary u) cyclize (with DCC, for example)

- 57 -

As shown in Scheme 13, compounds of the type A-84, in which R<sup>1</sup> is in either the (R) or (S) configuration, are converted into a variety of X<sup>1</sup> variants. Compounds of the type A-85 are prepared from A-84 under Tebbe  
5 olefination conditions. [Pine, et al., (1985)] Compounds of the type A-86 are prepared by treatment of A-84 with bis(tricyclohexyltin)sulfide and boron trichloride. [Stelious, K., et al., (1982)]. Compounds of the type A-87 are prepared by addition of the appropriate Grignard  
10 reagent or alkyllithium to A-84 or A-86 followed by acidic hydrolysis, and separation of the E and Z olefin isomers. [Aguerro, A., et al., (1986), Schrock, R.R., (1976) and Hansen C., et al., (1973)]. Compounds of the type A-88 are prepared by reduction of A-84 with lithium  
15 aluminum hydride [March, J. (1992), and Gaylord, J., (1956)] or alternatively by reduction of A-86 with Raney nickel. [Belen'kii, W., (1990)]. When Z<sup>1</sup> is S in A-88, oxidation to the cyclic sulfone variants is effected with, for example, KHSO<sub>5</sub>. [Trost, B.M., et al., Tet.  
20 Lett. (1981) 22:1287].

Taken together, compounds of the type A-84, A-85, A-86, A-87, A-88, and A-89 are of the general class A-90, which are converted analogues A-91, following for  
25 example, the procedure of Uno, et al. [Uno, H., et al., (1994)] (Scheme 13b). Compounds A-91 are converted to analogues A-92 via oxidation to the acid and coupling with L<sup>1</sup> (all of which can be prepared by standard  
methods) under the conditions utilized by Corey and Reichard. [Corey, E.J., et al., (1992a)]. Sulfurization  
30 of these compounds with Lawesson's reagent gives thiono analogues A-93. Compounds A-94 are prepared via addition of a nucleophile (e.g. CF<sub>3</sub>) [Francese, C., et al., (1987)] corresponding to L<sup>2</sup> to the aldehydes  
A-91 followed by oxidation of the alcohol with Dess-  
35 Martin periodinane. Sulfurization of these compounds

Scheme 13a

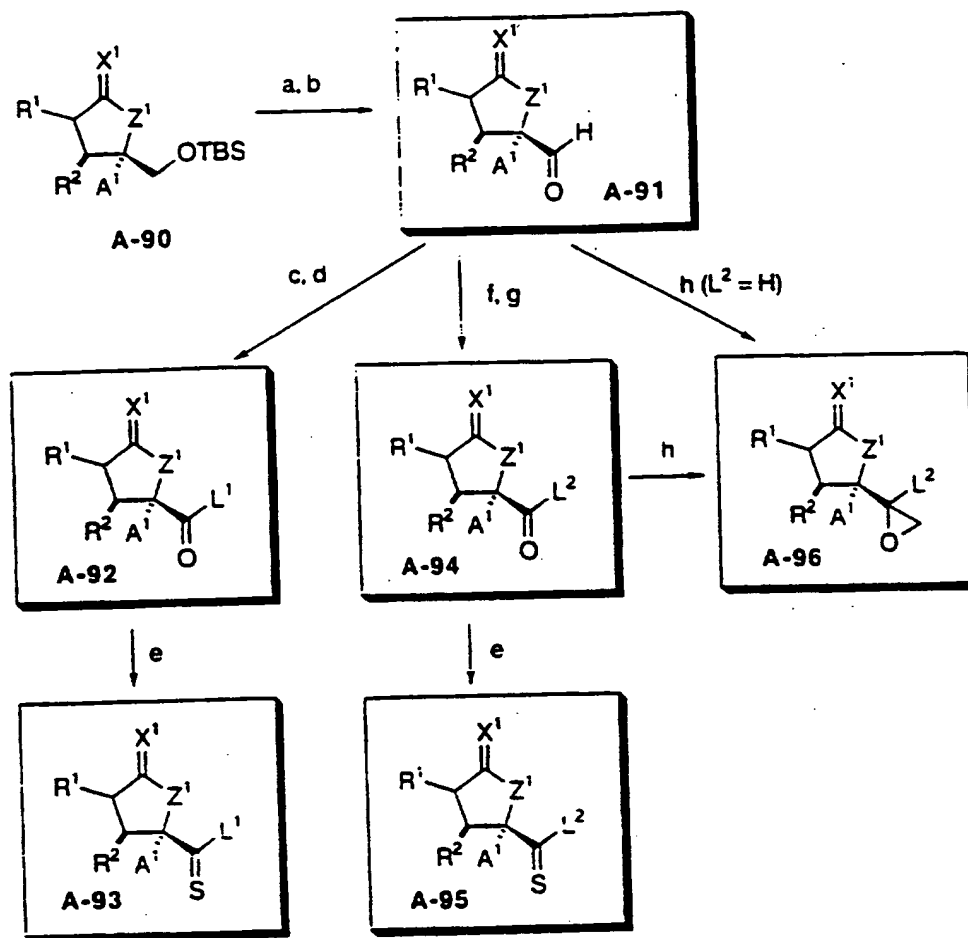


a) Tebbe olefination b) ((cyclohexyl)<sub>3</sub>Sn)<sub>2</sub>S, BCl<sub>3</sub> c) R<sub>3</sub>R<sub>c</sub>C(H)(MgBr): H<sup>-</sup> d) LiAlH<sub>4</sub>, Et<sub>2</sub>O  
 e) Raney Ni f) KHSO<sub>5</sub> g) TBAF, THF h) Swern oxidation i) NaClO<sub>2</sub>, NaH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> j) L<sup>1</sup>-H.  
 BOP-Cl k) Lawesson's reagent

**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**

- 59 -

Scheme 13b



a) TBAF, THF or HF,  $CH_3CN$  or 1% HCl, MeOH b)  $(COCl)_2$ , DMSO,  $Et_3N$ ,  $CH_2Cl_2$   
 c)  $NaClO_2$ , pH 7, THF d)  $L^1-H$ , BOP-Cl e) Lawesson's reagent f) Nucleophile corresponding to  $L^2$  g) Dess-Martin periodinane h)  $Me_2(S^-)(O)CH_2^-$

- 60 -

with Lawesson's reagent gives thiono analogues A-95. Epoxides of the type A-96 are prepared from A-91 or A-94 by the method of Johnson, thus completing the synthesis of all the analogues detailed in this section. Note: As  
5 above in all Schemes relating to claim 6, when a straight line is used to connect A<sup>2</sup> (or anything corresponding to A<sup>2</sup>) to the rest of the molecule, a dashed line should be assumed. The straight line is used simply for clarity. All A<sup>2</sup> are attached to the rest of the molecule on the  
10 "alpha" face (i.e. the bottom face).

The proposed syntheses of all of the compounds listed in claim 17 rely on a key intermediate from Scheme 9. As shown in Scheme 14, compounds of type B-1 are analogous to a subset of compounds A-53, whose  
15 various preparations were described in Schemes 1, 2, and 5-8, and described in the accompanying text.

In order to prepare analog B-2, the method of Corey, et al. is utilized. [Corey, E.J., et al., Tet. Lett. (1993) 34:6977]. Sulfurization of B-2 with, for example,  
20 Lawesson's reagent [Cava, M.P., et al., (1985)] provides analogs B-3.

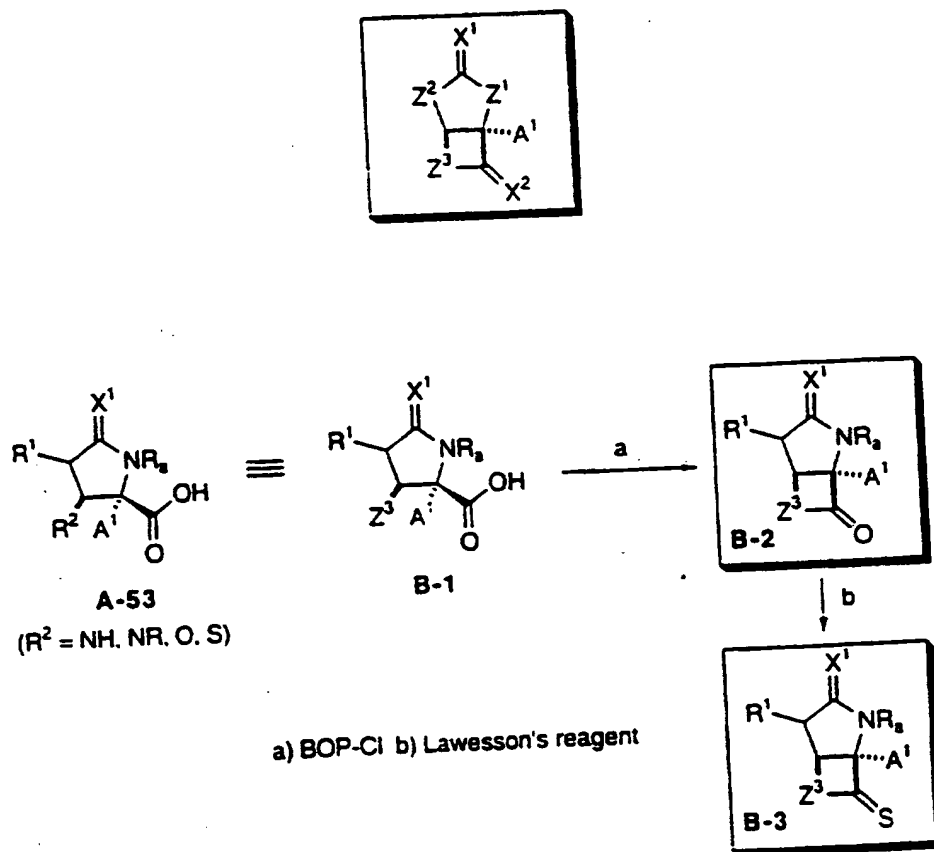
The preparation of compounds of type B-1 is summarized in Scheme 15. Thus the same starting material (A-1) as that used in Scheme 1 is elaborated to all of  
25 the compounds B-2 by the same methods as those used in Schemes 1, 2, 5, 6, and 8. There are then two possible general strategies for the conversion of these intermediates to B-2. The first is analogous to that detailed in Schemes 1, 2, 5, 6, 8, and 9, in which Z<sup>5</sup>  
30 (suitably activated or protected) serves as the nucleophile in the relevant reactions.

The other strategy, based on that shown in Scheme 7 is also depicted in Scheme 15. Thus, dihydroxylation of B-4 gives B-5, which is then be deoxygenated as before,  
35 giving B-6. Separation of the diastereomers, Mitsunobu



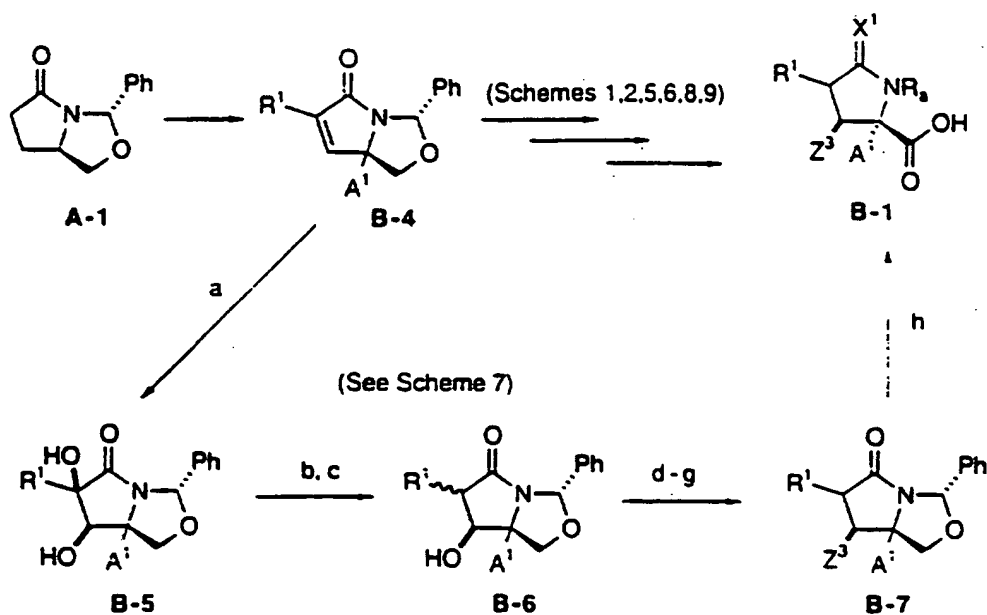
- 61 -

Scheme 14



- 62 -

Scheme 15



a)  $OsO_4$ , NMO, water, acetone b) TCDI c)  $Bu_3SnH$ , AIBN d) separate diastereomers  
 e) DEAD,  $PPh_3$ , acetic acid f) conversion of acetate to leaving group g) nucleophile  
 corresponding to  $Z^3$  h) see Schemes 8 and 9

- 63 -

inversion of the secondary hydroxyl, and displacement of a leaving group derived from the Mitsunobu product provides compounds of the type B-7, which are then elaborated to B-1 as described in Schemes 8 and 9.

5       The proposed syntheses of all of the compounds listed in claim 17 rely on intermediate A-81 from Scheme 12. As shown in Scheme 16, compounds of type B-11 are analogous to a subset of compounds A-81, whose various preparations are illustrated in Scheme 12, and described  
10 in the accompanying text. Conversion of compounds of the type B-11 to B-12 is performed in analogy to Scheme 12. Compounds of the type B-13 are prepared from B-12 following the relevant steps in Schemes 13a and 13b.

      In order to prepare analogs B-14, the method of  
15 Corey, et al. is utilized. [Corey, E.J., et al., (1993)] Sulfurization of B-14 with, for example, Lawesson's reagent [Cava, M.P., et al., (1985)] provides analogs B-15.

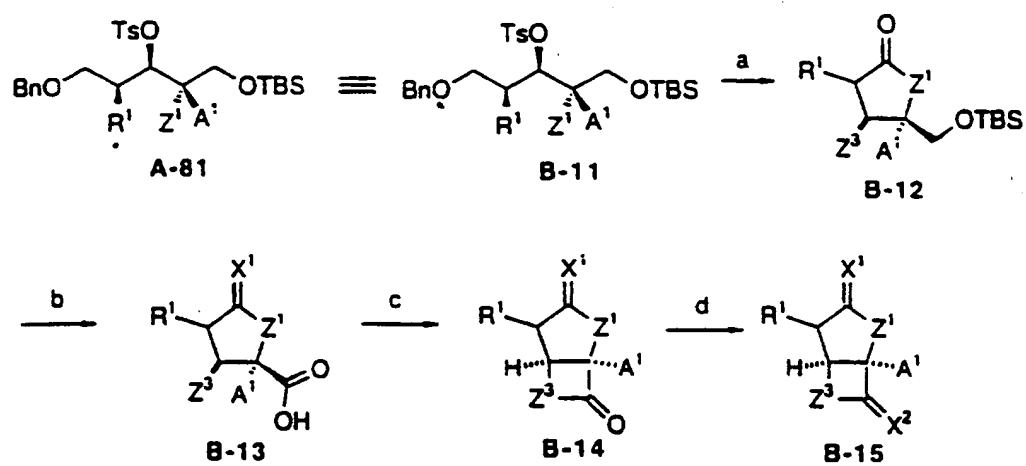
      The preparation of the compounds covered by claim 7  
20 relies on a key intermediate from Scheme 7. As shown in Scheme 17, compound C-1 is analogous to A-41, whose preparation is illustrated in Scheme 7 and described in the accompanying text. Following the work of Fuchs, [Hutchinson, D.K., et al., J. Am. Chem. Soc. (1987)] C-1  
25 is treated sequentially with bis(benzyloxymethyl)lithium cuprate and acidic water, giving compounds of the type C-2. Both configurations of R<sup>7</sup> can be accessed. See Schemes 1 and 2 for details. As in Scheme 8, mild acidic hydrolysis, protection of the primary hydroxyl, and  
30 alkylation or protection of the nitrogen gives compounds C-2.

      Deprotection of the benzyl group by, for example, catalytic hydrogenolysis followed by displacement of the derived tosylate with a nucleophile corresponding to Z<sup>7</sup>,  
35 accesses compounds C-3, in which Z<sup>7</sup> is protected, if

**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**

- 64 -

Scheme 16



a) See Scheme 12 b) See Scheme 13b c) BOP-Cl d) Lawesson's reagent

- 65 -

necessary. Elaboration to carboxylic acids C-4 follows the same set of reactions in Schemes 8 and 9, allowing the preparation of all X<sup>9</sup> variants. Deprotection of Z<sup>7</sup>, if necessary, followed by cyclization with, for example, DCC, yields bicyclic structures C-5 which if desired are sulfurized with Lawesson's reagent [Cava, M.P., et al., (1985)] to give C-6.

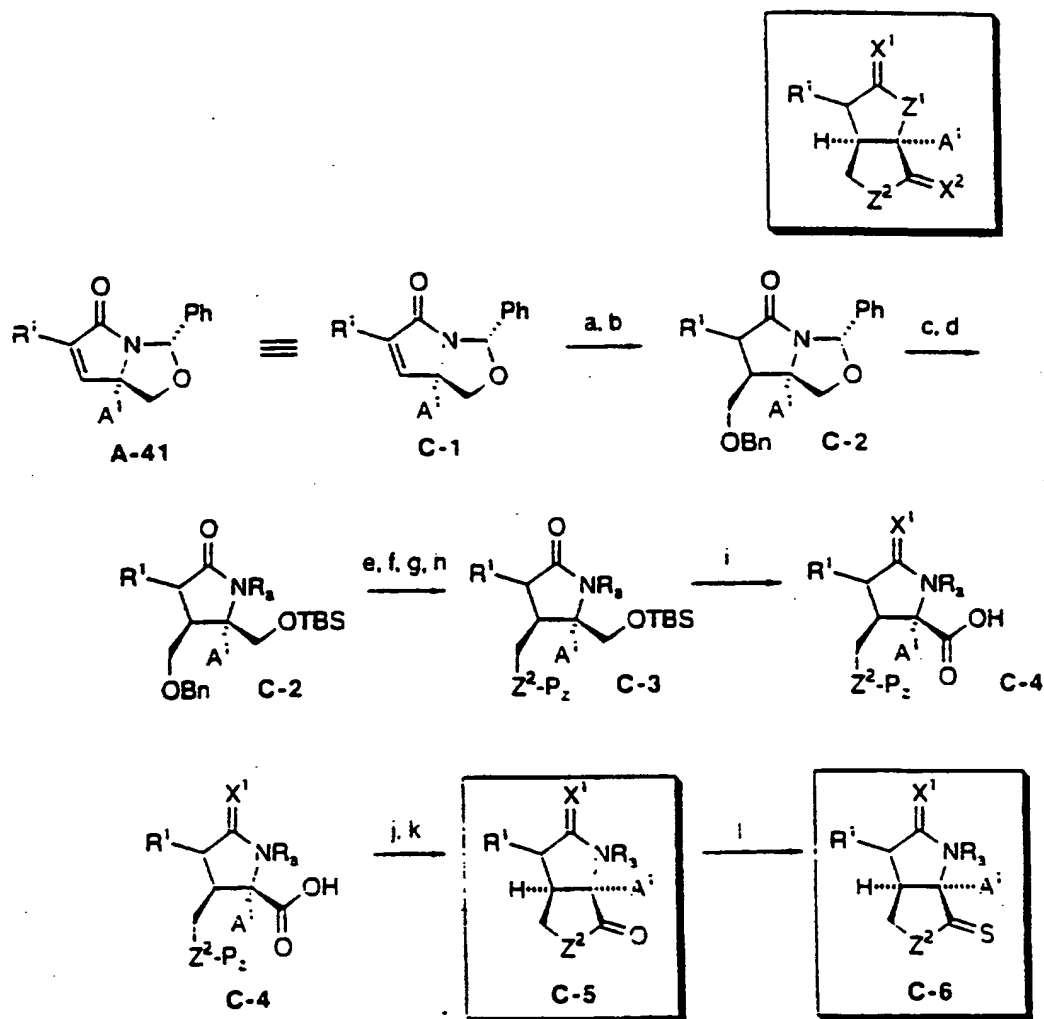
The preparation of the compounds covered by the right-hand structure in claim 7 relies on a key intermediate from Scheme 9. As shown in Scheme 18, compound C-11 is analogous to a subset, defined by Z<sup>7</sup>, of the class of compounds A-52, whose preparation is illustrated in Schemes 1-8, and described in the accompanying text. Deprotection of the primary hydroxyl with, for example, TBAF in THF and oxidation via, for example, under Swern oxidation conditions to the aldehydes C-12. Homologation of the aldehyde with, for example, the phosphorous ylide derived from triphenylmethoxymethylphosphonium chloride [Jamison, T.F., et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, (1994) 116:5505] yields enolethers of the type C-13, which are converted to carboxylic acids C-14 with acidic hydrolysis and oxidation of the resulting aldehyde with, for example, buffered NaClO<sub>2</sub> oxidation. [Corey, E.J., et al., (1992a)].

Deprotection of Z<sup>7</sup>, if necessary, followed by cyclization with, for example, DCC, [Klausner, Y.S. et al., *Synthesis* (1972) 453] yields bicyclic structures C-15 which if desired are sulfurized with Lawesson's reagent [Cava, M.P., (1985)] to give C-16.

The preparation of the compounds covered by claims 8 and 39 relies primarily on the boron-enolate mediated asymmetric aldol procedures of Evans [Evans, D.A., et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, (1981) 103:2127] and on the results of studies on intramolecular radical

- 66 -

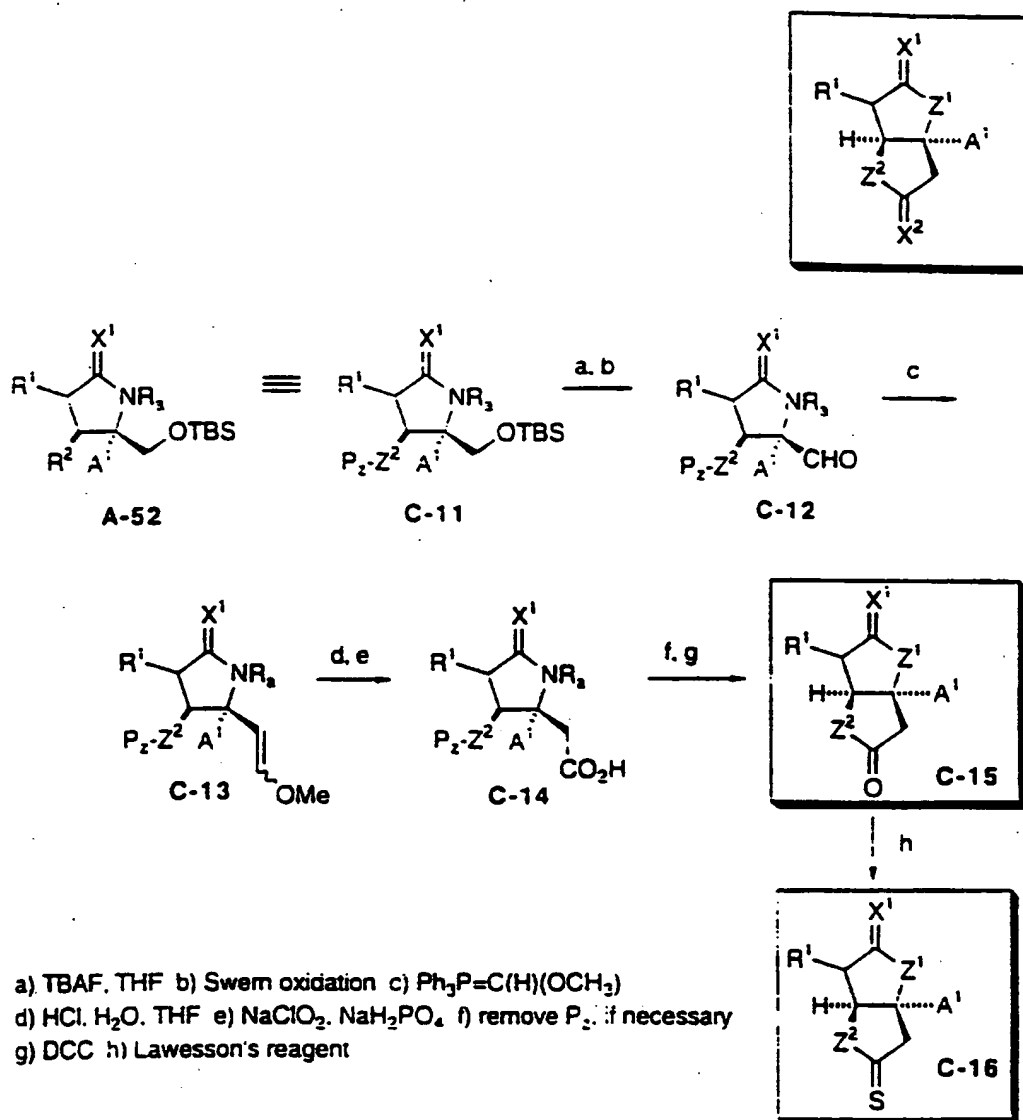
Scheme 17



- a)  $(\text{BnOCH}_2)_2\text{CuLi}$ ; acidic water b) See also Scheme 1 for cases in which  $\text{A}^1$  is H.  
 c)  $\text{HCl}$ ,  $\text{HS}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{SH}$ ,  $\text{CF}_3\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$  d) See Scheme 8 e)  $\text{H}_2$ ,  $\text{Pd/C}$  f)  $\text{TsCl}$ , pyridine  
 g) Nucleophile corresponding to  $\text{Z}^2$  h) Protection of  $\text{Z}^2$ , if necessary i) See Schemes 8 and 9  
 j) deprotection of  $\text{Z}^2$ , if necessary k)  $\text{DCC}$  l) Lawesson's reagent

- 67 -

Scheme 18





- 68 -

cyclizations. [Curran, D.P., *Comprehensive Organic Synthesis*, (1991) 4:779-831].

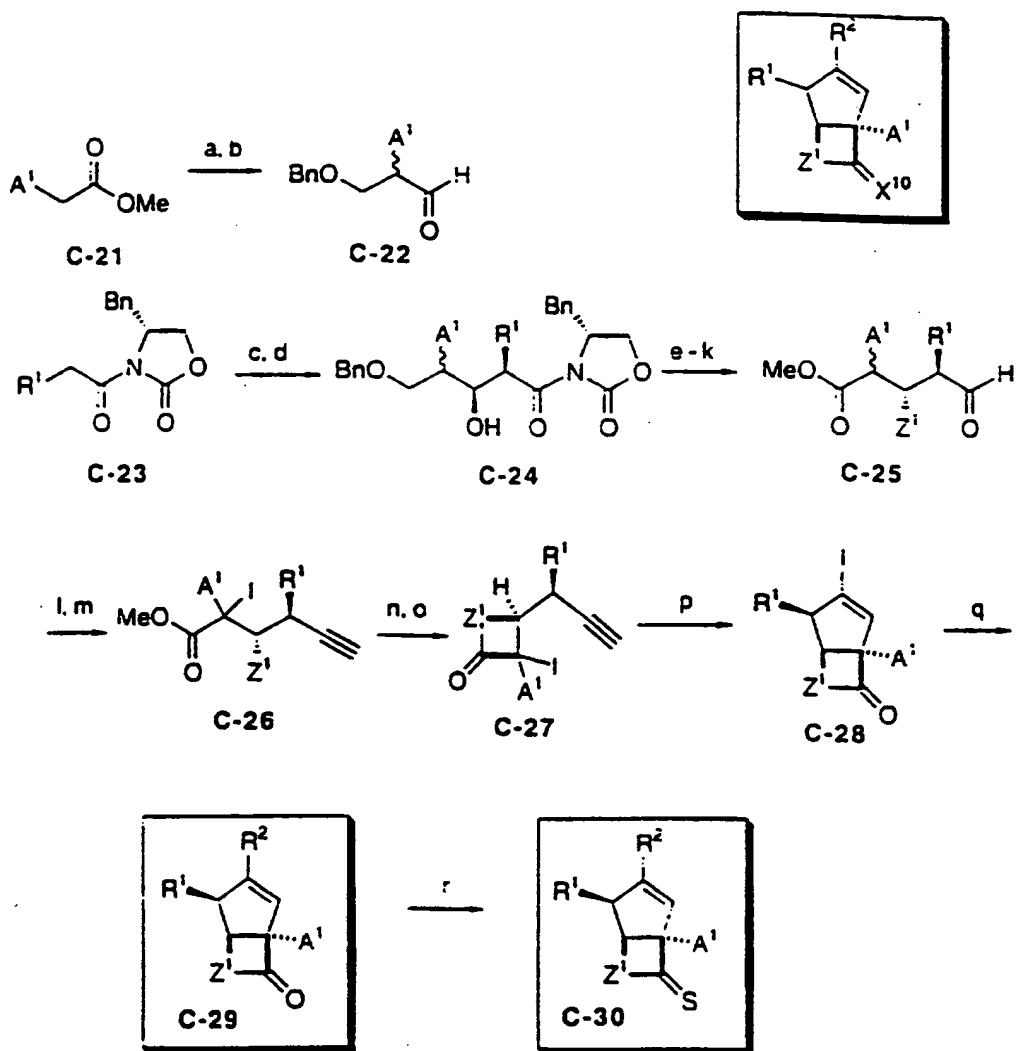
Esters C-21 (Scheme 19), prepared by standard methods, are deprotonated and then alkylated with  
5 benzyloxybromo-methane and reduced with DIBAL-H to give aldehydes C-22 as a racemic mixture. Addition of C-22 to an boron enolate derived from chiral oxazolidinone imides C-23 [Evans, D.A., et al., (1981)] yields C-24 as a mixture of A<sup>3</sup> diastereomers. The configurational  
10 identity of the other two new stereocenters is established in this reaction and is not affected by the configuration of A<sup>3</sup>.

Conversion to aldehydes C-25 in a six-step procedure (for example, tosylation of the secondary hydroxyl,  
15 displacement with a nucleophile corresponding to Z<sup>7</sup>, catalytic hydrogenolysis of the benzyl group, oxidation of the alcohol to the carboxylic acid and esterification) allows for preparation of the substrate for the intramolecular radical cycloaddition. Thus, treatment of  
20 the aldehyde with the Gilbert reagent [Gilbert, J.C., et al., *J. Org. Chem.* (1982) 47:1837] and replacement of the enolizable hydrogen with iodine gives an acetylenes C-26, which, after deprotection of Z<sup>7</sup>, if necessary, and cyclization with, for example, BOP-Cl, affords C-27.

25 Exposure of C-27 to atom-transfer, intramolecular radical cyclization conditions [Curran, D.P., et al., *Tet. Lett.* (1987) 28:2477 and Curran, D.P., et al., *J. Org. Chem.* (1989) 54:3140] gives compounds C-28. This reaction deserves further comment. The stereochemistry  
30 of A<sup>1</sup> and the iodine atom are inconsequential because the radical generated from the iodine can interconvert under the reaction conditions. Further, only one of the radical diastereomers will be able to cyclize - that giving the cis-4,5 ring system depicted, because the  
35 trans-4,5 suffers from much greater ring strain.

- 69 -

Scheme 19



a) LDA;  $\text{BnOCH}_2\text{Br}$  b) DIBAL-H c)  $\text{Bu}_2\text{BOTf}$ ,  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$  d) **C-22** e)  $\text{TsCl}$ , pyridine f) Nucleophile corresponding to  $Z^1$  g)  $\text{H}_2$ ,  $\text{Pd/C}$  h) Swern oxidation i)  $\text{NaClO}_2$ ,  $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4$  j)  $\text{CH}_2\text{N}_2$  k)  $\text{LiAlH}_4$ ; Swern oxidation l) Base, Gilbert reagent m) LDA;  $\text{TMS-Cl}$ ;  $\text{I}_2$  n)  $\text{LiOH}$ , THF, water o) BOP-Cl p)  $(\text{Bu}_3\text{Sn})_2$ ,  $\text{nv}$  q)  $(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4\text{Pd}$ ,  $\text{R}^2\text{-M}$  r) Lawesson's reagent

- 70 -

This cyclization is favored for two other reasons. First, it is a 5-endo-dig type cyclization and therefore favored according to Baldwin's rules for cyclization.

[Baldwin, J. E., *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* (1976)

5 734]. Second, the atom transfer conditions used are ideal because the resulting vinylic radical is very reactive and is rapidly quenched by the iodine radical. [Curran, D.P., et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, (1986) 108:2489].

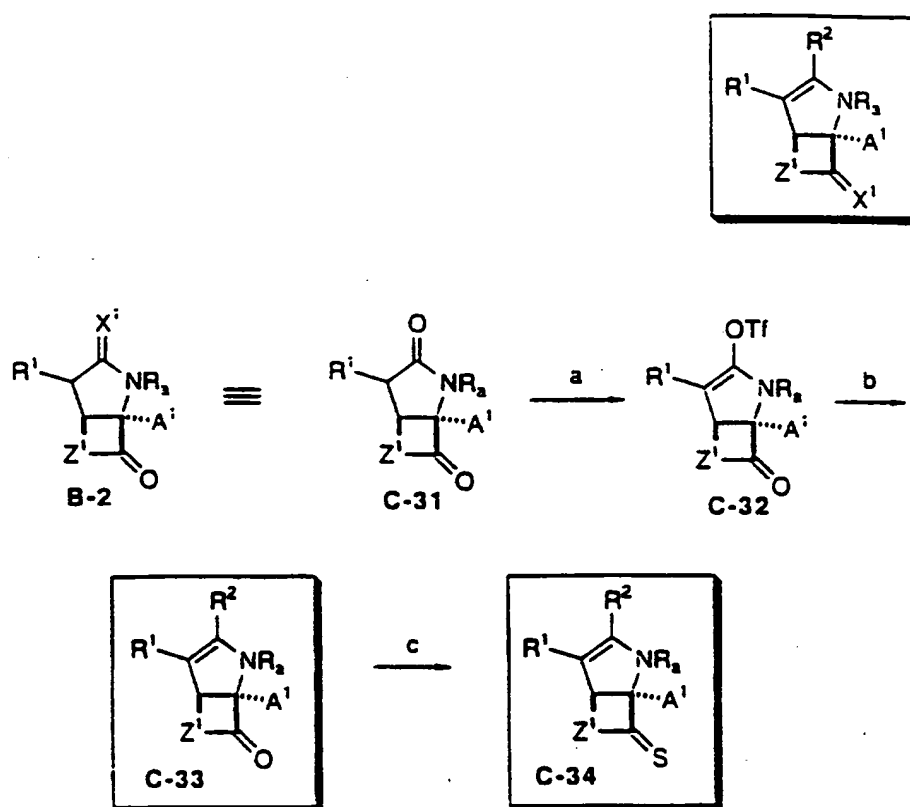
10 Elaboration of C-28 to C-29 is accomplished using, for example, standard Stille [Stille, J.K., *Angew. Chem., Int. Ed. Engl.* (1986) 25:504] or Heck [Heck, R.F., *Comprehensive Organic Synthesis*, (1991) 4:833-863] type coupling conditions using a suitable metallic derivative  
15 (M is, e.g., tributylstannyl) of R<sup>9</sup>. Sulfurization with Lawesson's reagent [Cava, M.P., et al., (1985)] gives compounds C-30, thus completing the preparation of all the compounds claimed in claims 8 and 39.

The preparation of the compounds covered by claims 9  
20 and 40 relies primarily on intermediate B-2, whose preparation is described in Schemes 13a, 13b and 14 and discussed in the accompanying text. As shown in Scheme 20, C-31 is deprotonated with a suitable base, and the resulting enolate is treated with, for example, the  
25 triflate source PhN(Tf)<sub>2</sub> [McMurry, J.E., et al., *Tet. Lett.* (1983) 24:979]. The vinyl triflates C-32 are treated with, for example, a catalytic amount of (Ph<sub>3</sub>P)<sub>4</sub>Pd and a suitable metallic derivative [Stille, J.K. (1986) and Heck, R.F. (1991)] (M is, e.g., tributylstannyl) of  
30 R<sup>9</sup>, giving analogues C-33, which can be treated with Lawesson's reagent [Cava, M.P., et al., (1985)] gives compounds C-34, thus completing the preparation of all the compounds in this section.

The preparation of the compounds covered by claims  
35 10 and 41 relies primarily on intermediate A-38, whose

- 71 -

Scheme 20



a) LiHMDS; PhN(Tf)<sub>2</sub> b) (Ph<sub>3</sub>P)<sub>4</sub>Pd, LiCl, R<sup>2</sup>-M c) Lawesson's reagent

- 72 -

preparation is illustrated in Schemes 1, 5, and 6, and discussed in the accompanying text. Compounds of the type C-41 (Scheme 21) can therefore be prepared with either the (R) or (S) configuration of Z<sup>7</sup> by following the procedures illustrated in Schemes 1-6, and discussed in the accompanying text.

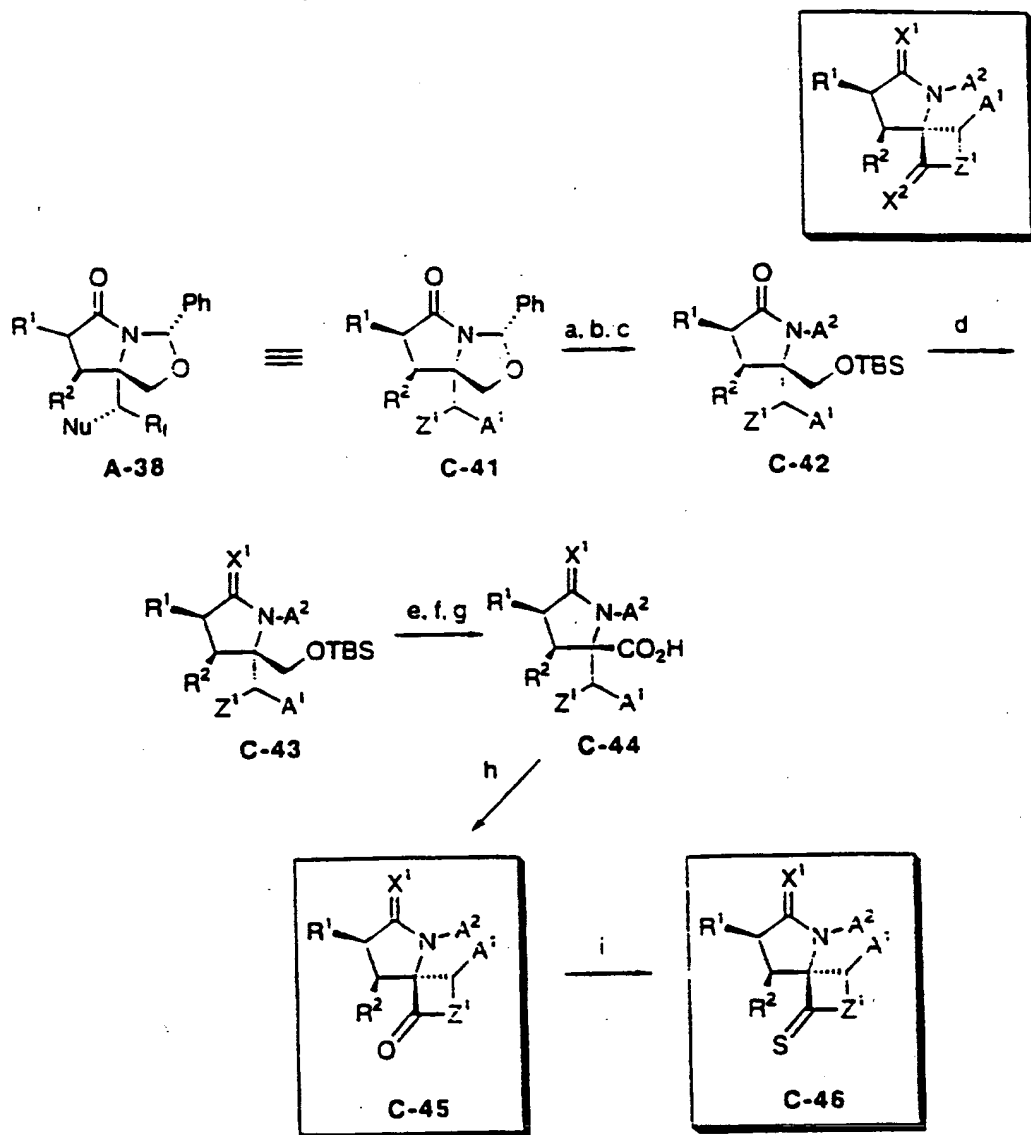
Mild acidic hydrolysis of C-41, [Corey, E.J., et al., (1992a)] followed by protection of the primary hydroxyl [Corey, E.J., et al., (1972)] allows for installation of A<sup>4</sup> via standard alkylation procedures, [Challis, N. (1970)] giving C-42. Elaboration of these intermediates to C-43 is performed as described for the analogous compounds in Scheme 8. Deprotection of the primary hydroxyl allows for oxidation to the carboxylic acids C-44, which are cyclized with, for example, BOP-Cl, giving analogues C-45, which can be treated with Lawesson's reagent [Cava, M.P., et al., (1985)] gives compounds C-46, thus completing the preparation of all the compounds in claims 10 and 41.

The preparation of the compounds covered by claims 11 and 42 follows the strategy illustrated in Schemes 1, 3, 4, 5, 8, and 9, and described in the accompanying text. Thus, as shown in Scheme 22, C-51, being analogous to A-2 is elaborated to C-52 following the same methods used in Scheme 1 using an aldehyde containing A<sup>5</sup> and a protected form of Z<sup>7</sup> in either the (R) or (S) configuration. Protection of the secondary hydroxyl gives compounds C-52, [Corey, E.J., et al., (1972)] which can be treated with a nucleophile corresponding to R<sup>9</sup> and subsequent quenching with acidic water, giving C-53. The reasons governing the indicated stereoselectivity of the nucleophilic addition and aqueous quenching have been discussed in the text accompanying Scheme 1.

Deprotection and subsequent conversion of the secondary hydroxyl to the tosylate allows for

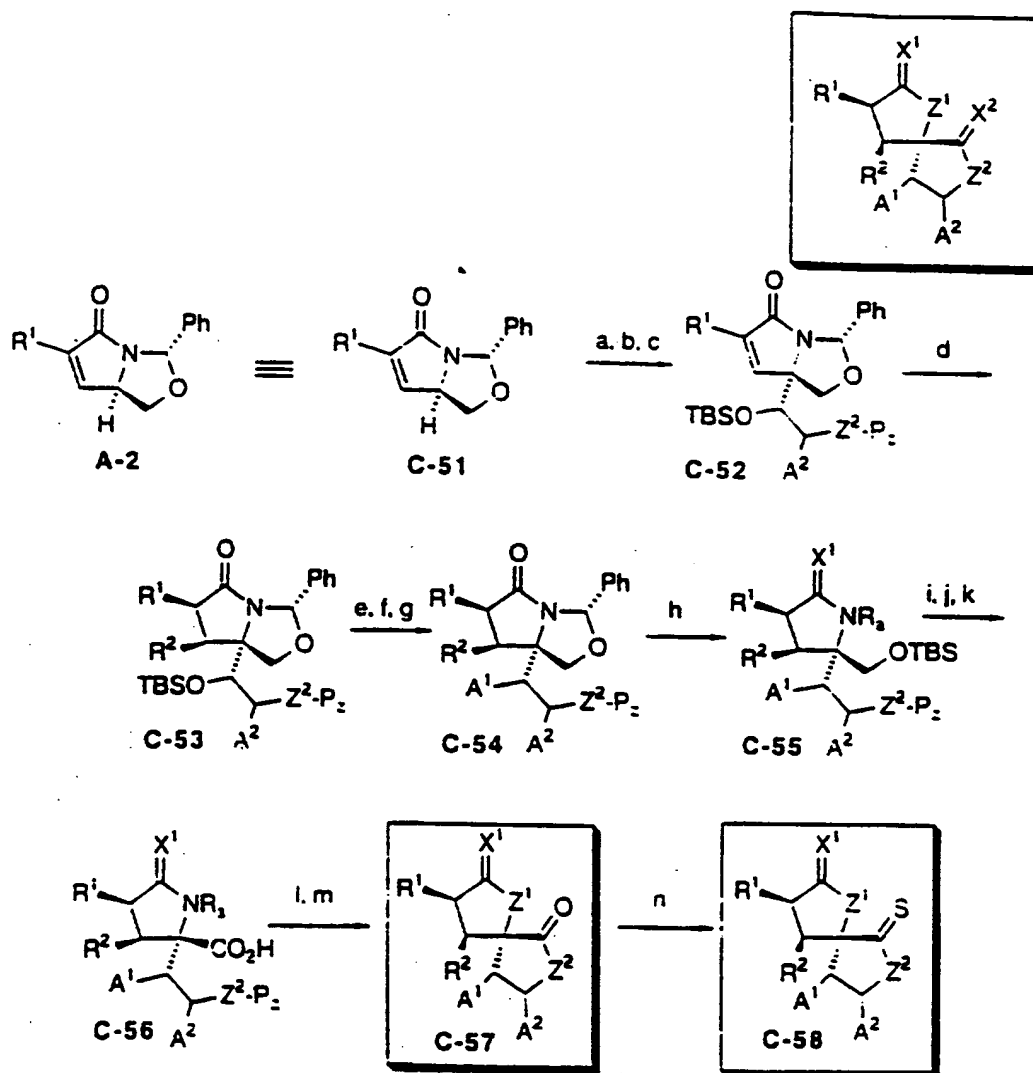
- 73 -

Scheme 21



a) HCl, HS(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>SH, CF<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH b) TBS-Cl, imidazole, DMF c) base: electrophile corresponding to A<sup>2</sup> d) See Scheme 8 e) TBAF, THF f) Swern Oxidation g) NaClO<sub>2</sub>, NaH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> h) BOP-Cl i) Lawesson's reagent

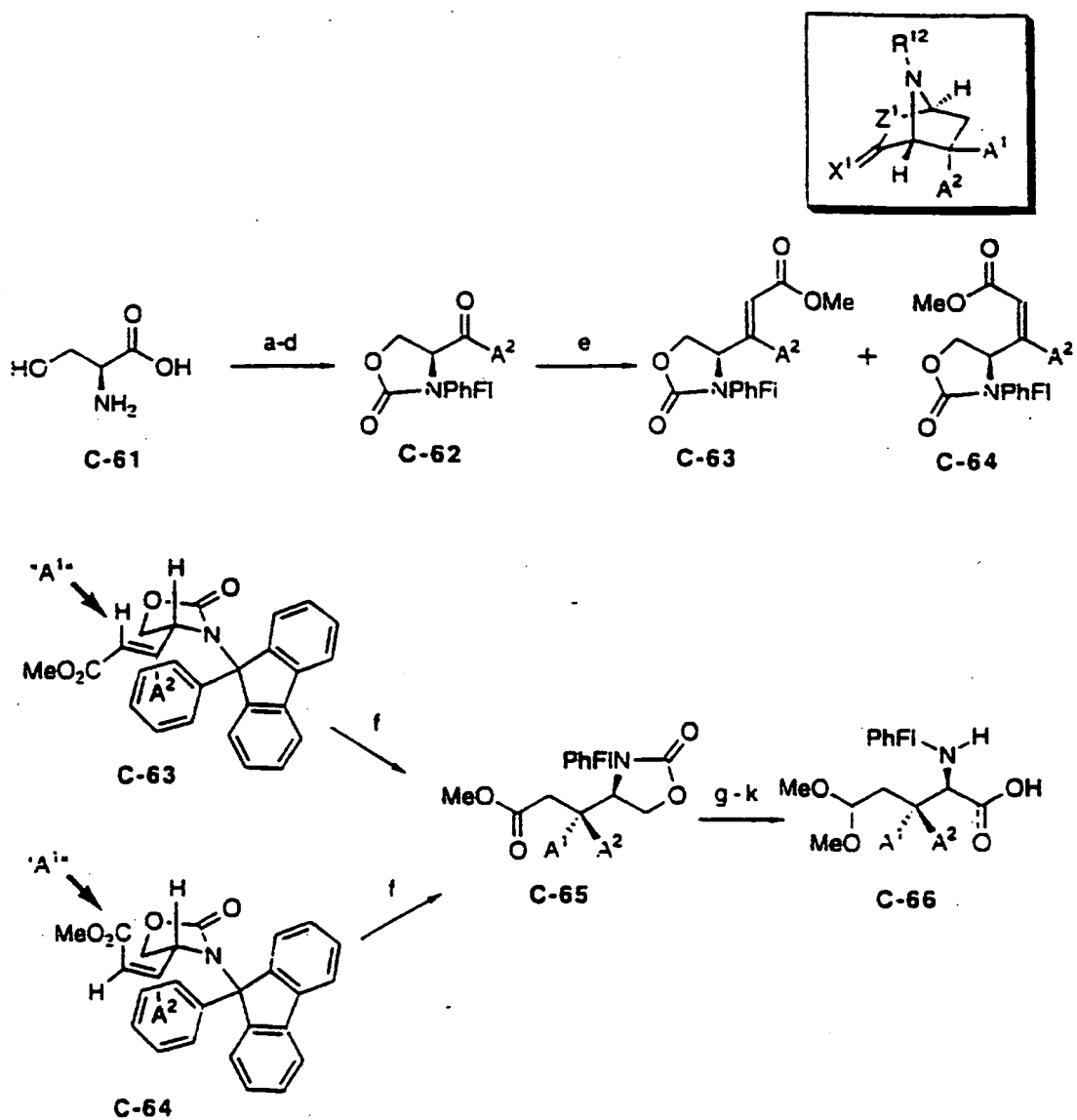
Scheme 22



- a) TBS-OTf, 2,6-lutidine b) [(A<sup>2</sup>)(Z<sup>2</sup>-P<sub>2</sub>)]CHCHO, SnCl<sub>4</sub>, Et<sub>2</sub>O c) TBS-Cl, imidazole, DMF  
 d) Nucleophile corresponding to R<sup>2</sup>: acidic water e) TBAF, THF f) TsCl, pyridine g) Nucleophile corresponding to A<sup>1</sup> h) See Scheme 8 i) TBAF, THF j) Swern oxidation k) NaClO<sub>2</sub>, NaH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>  
 l) deprotect Z<sup>2</sup>, if necessary m) DCC n) Lawesson's reagent

- 75 -

Scheme 23





- 76 -

introduction of A<sup>3</sup> via displacement of the tosylate with a nucleophile corresponding to A<sup>3</sup> to give compounds of the type C-54. [Hanessian, S., (1980)]. Elaboration of these compounds to C-55 is performed with the methods  
5 illustrated in Scheme 8 and described in the accompanying text. Deprotection of the primary hydroxyl allows for oxidation to the carboxylic acids C-56, which are cyclized with, for example, DCC, [Klausner, Y.S., et al., (1972)] following deprotection of Z<sup>7</sup>, if necessary, to  
10 give analogues C-57. Sulfurization with Lawesson's reagent [Cava, M.P., (1985)] gives compounds C-58, thus completing the preparation of all the compounds in claims 12 and 42.

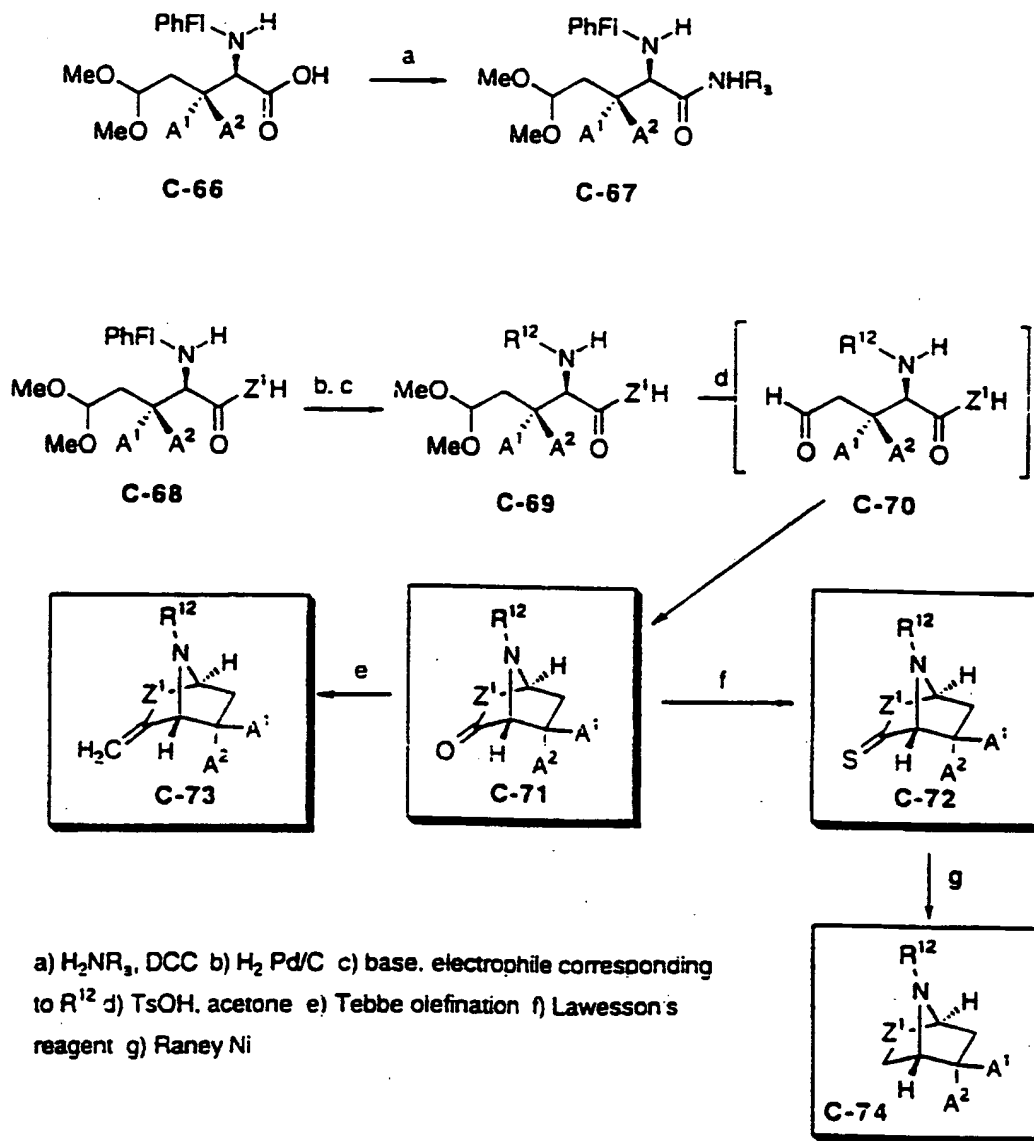
The preparation of the compounds covered by claims  
15 13 and 43 relies primarily on the results of Lubell, et al., *J. Org. Chem.*, 1990 55:3511. Thus, as shown in Scheme 23, L-serine (C-61) is converted to ketones C-62 by known procedures. (PhFl is an abbreviation of 9-phenyl-9-fluorenyl.) Standard Wadsworth-Emmons  
20 olefination of C-62 yields either C-63 or C-64, or a mixture thereof. The composition of the product mixture is of no consequence, since both olefin isomers yield the same diastereomer in the next reaction.

Thus, a cuprate reagent derived from A<sup>1</sup> approaches  
25 from the back face of both C-63 or C-64 since the very bulky PhFl group blocks the other face completely, giving C-65 as the major diastereomer. C-65 is converted to C-66 in a five-step procedure (reduction of the methyl ester to the aldehyde and protection as the dimethyl  
30 acetal, deprotection of the oxazolidinone, and oxidation of the primary alcohol to the carboxylic acid.)

As depicted in Scheme 24, DCC-mediated coupling, for example, of C-66 with an amine, yields amides C-67. Taken together, C-66 and C-67 comprise the general class  
35 of compounds C-88. The PhFl group is removed by

- 77 -

Scheme 24



- 78 -

catalytic hydrogenolysis, and the free amine alkylated with an electrophile corresponding to  $R^{12}$  (reductive amination with an aldehyde or ketone and  $\text{NaCNBH}_3$  is another option) to give compounds C-69. Acidic  
5 hydrolysis of the dimethyl acetal yields intermediate aldehyde C-70, which cyclizes to analogues C-73.

Tebbe olefination of C-71 provides compounds C-73. Treatment of C-71 with Lawesson's reagent provides compounds C-72, which can be desulfurized with Raney  
10 Nickel to give compounds C-74, thus completing the synthesis of all the compounds in claims 13 and 43.

The preparation of the compounds covered by claims 14 and 44 relies primarily on the results of Dener, et al., [*J. Org. Chem.*, 1993, 58:1159], and on those of  
15 Evans et al., [*J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1981, 103:2127]. Thus, as shown in Scheme 25, D-aspartic acid (C-81) is protected and alkylated with an electrophile corresponding to  $A^6$  to give compounds C-82, with the major diastereomer to be that shown. Dener et al., [*J.*  
20 *Org. Chem.*, 1993, 58:1159]. (PhFl is an abbreviation of 9-phenyl-9-fluorenyl.) Site-specific DIBAL-H reduction (owing to the extreme size of the PhFl group) affords aldehyde C-83.

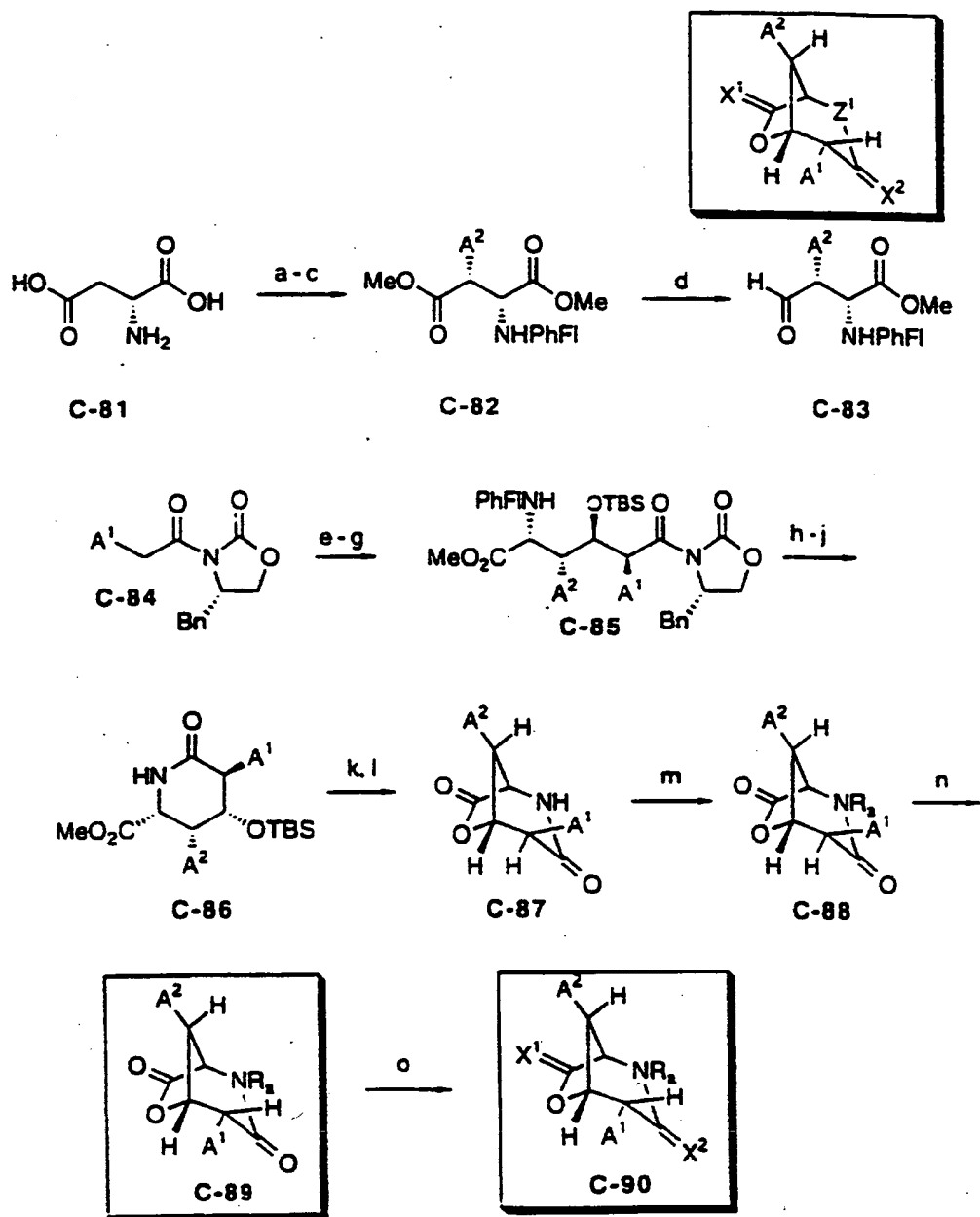
A diastereoselective boron-mediated aldol addition  
25 is the next step. Following the procedure of Evans, et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, (1981) 103:2127, one obtains C-85, after TBS protection of the secondary hydroxyl. The oxazolidinone is removed with lithium hydroperoxide, the PhFl group removed with catalytic hydrogenolysis, and  
30 lactam formation accomplished under, for example, DCC conditions, to give C-86. Removal of the TBS group with TBAF and lactone formation (saponification of the methyl ester with LiOH, followed by DCC coupling may be necessary) yields C-87, which is elaborated to C-88 by  
35 alkylating the amide nitrogen with a nucleophile

- 79 -

corresponding to  $R_d$ . Epimerization with DBU provides access to compounds C-89. Treatment of C-89 with Lawesson's reagent, Cava et al., *Tetrahedron*, 1985, 41: 5061, yields compounds C-90, thus completing the  
5 preparation of all compounds in this section. Examples 13-21 below are individual syntheses.

- 80 -

Scheme 25



a-c) See Dener, *et. al.* d) DIBAL-H e)  $\text{Bu}_2\text{OTf}$  f) C-83 g) TBS-Cl, imidazole, DMF  
 h)  $\text{LiOOH}$ , THF,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  i)  $\text{H}_2$ , Pd/C j) DCC k) TBAF, THF l) cyclize m) base, electrophile  
 corresponding to  $\text{R}_3$  n) DBU o) Lawesson's reagent

- 81 -

Use

The disclosed compounds are used to treat conditions mediated directly by the proteolytic function of the proteasome such as muscle wasting, or mediated indirectly via proteins which are processed by the proteasome such as NF- $\kappa$ B. The proteasome participates in the rapid elimination and post-translational processing of proteins (e.g., enzymes) involved in cellular regulation (e.g., cell cycle, gene transcription, and metabolic pathways), intercellular communication, and the immune response (e.g., antigen presentation). Specific examples discussed below include  $\beta$ -amyloid protein and regulatory proteins such as cyclins and transcription factor NF- $\kappa$ B. Treating as used herein includes reversing, reducing, or arresting the symptoms, clinical signs, and underlying pathology of a condition in manner to improve or stabilize the subject's condition.

Alzheimer's disease is characterized by extracellular deposits of  $\beta$ -amyloid protein ( $\beta$ -AP) in senile plaques and cerebral vessels.  $\beta$ -AP is a peptide fragment of 39 to 42 amino acids derived from an amyloid protein precursor (APP). At least three isoforms of APP are known (695, 751, and 770 amino acids). Alternative splicing of mRNA generates the isoforms; normal processing affects a portion of the  $\beta$ -AP sequence, thereby preventing the generation of  $\beta$ -AP. It is believed that abnormal protein processing by the proteasome contributes to the abundance of  $\beta$ -AP in the Alzheimer brain. The APP-processing enzyme in rats contains about ten different subunits (22 kDa - 32 kDa). The 25 kDa subunit has an N-terminal sequence of X-Gln-Asn-Pro-Met-X-Thr-Gly-Thr-Ser, which is identical to the  $\beta$ -subunit of human macropain. Kojima, S. et al., *Fed. Eur. Biochem. Soc.*, (1992) 304:57-60. The APP-processing enzyme cleaves at the Gln<sup>15</sup>-Lys<sup>16</sup> bond; in the presence of

- 82 -

calcium ion, the enzyme also cleaves at the Met<sup>-1</sup>-Asp<sup>1</sup> bond, and the Asp<sup>1</sup>-Ala<sup>2</sup> bonds to release the extracellular domain of  $\beta$ -AP.

One embodiment, therefore, is a method of treating  
5 Alzheimer's disease, including administering to a subject an effective amount of a compound (e.g., pharmaceutical composition) having a formula disclosed herein. Such treatment includes reducing the rate of  $\beta$ -AP processing, reducing the rate of  $\beta$ -AP plaque formation, and reducing  
10 the rate of  $\beta$ -AP generation, and reducing the clinical signs of Alzheimer's disease.

Other embodiments of the invention relate to cachexia and muscle-wasting diseases. The proteasome degrades many proteins in maturing reticulocytes and  
15 growing fibroblasts. In cells deprived of insulin or serum, the rate of proteolysis nearly doubles. Inhibiting the proteasome reduces proteolysis, thereby reducing both muscle protein loss and the nitrogenous load on kidneys or liver. Proteasome inhibitors are  
20 useful for treating conditions such as cancer, chronic infectious diseases, fever, muscle disuse (atrophy) and denervation, nerve injury, fasting, renal failure associated with acidosis, and hepatic failure. See, e.g., Goldberg, U.S. Pat. No. 5,340,736 (1994).

25 Embodiments of the invention therefore encompass methods for: reducing the rate of muscle protein degradation in a cell, reducing the rate of intracellular protein degradation, reducing the rate of degradation of p53 protein in a cell, and inhibiting the growth of p53-  
30 related cancers). Each of these methods includes the step of contacting a cell (in vivo or in vitro, e.g., a muscle in a subject) with an effective amount of a compound (e.g., pharmaceutical composition) of a formula disclosed herein.

- 83 -

Another protein processed by the proteasome is NF- $\kappa$ B, a member of the Rel protein family. The Rel family of transcriptional activator proteins can be divided into two groups. The first group requires proteolytic processing, and includes p50 (NF- $\kappa$ B1, 105 kDa) and p52 (NF- $\kappa$ 2, 100 kDa). The second group does not require proteolytic processing, and includes p65 (RelA, Rel (c-Rel), and RelB). Both homo- and heterodimers can be formed by Rel family members; NF- $\kappa$ B, for example, is a p50-p65 heterodimer. After phosphorylation and ubiquitination of I $\kappa$ B and p105, the two proteins are degraded and processed, respectively, to produce active NF- $\kappa$ B which translocates from the cytoplasm to the nucleus. Ubiquitinated p105 is also processed by purified proteasomes. Palombella et al., *Cell* (1994) 78:773-785. Active NF- $\kappa$ B forms a stereospecific enhancer complex with other transcriptional activators and, e.g., HMG I(Y), inducing selective expression of a particular gene.

NF- $\kappa$ B regulates genes involved in the immune and inflammatory response, and mitotic events. For example, NF- $\kappa$ B is required for the expression of the immunoglobulin light chain  $\kappa$  gene, the IL-2 receptor  $\alpha$ -chain gene, the class I major histocompatibility complex gene, and a number of cytokine genes encoding, for example, IL-2, IL-6, granulocyte colony-stimulating factor, and IFN- $\beta$ . Palombella et al., (1994). Some embodiments of the invention include methods of affecting the level of expression of IL-2, MHC-I, IL-6, IFN- $\beta$  or any of the other previously-mentioned proteins, each method including administering to a subject an effective amount of a compound of a formula disclosed herein.

NF- $\kappa$ B also participates in the expression of the cell adhesion genes that encode E-selectin, P-selectin, ICAM, and VCAM-1, Collins, T., *Lab. Invest.* (1993)



- 84 -

68:499-508. One embodiment of the invention is a method for inhibiting cell adhesion (e.g., cell adhesion mediated by E-selectin, P-selectin, ICAM, or VCAM-1), including contacting a cell with (or administering to a  
5 subject) an effective amount of a compound (e.g., pharmaceutical composition) having a formula disclosed herein.

NF- $\kappa$ B also binds specifically to the HIV-enhancer/promoter. When compared to the Nef of mac239,  
10 the HIV regulatory protein Nef of pbj14 differs by two amino acids in the region which controls protein kinase binding. It is believed that the protein kinase signals the phosphorylation of I- $\kappa$ B, triggering I $\kappa$ B degradation through the ubiquitin-proteasome pathway. After  
15 degradation, NF- $\kappa$ B is released into the nucleus, thus enhancing the transcription of HIV. Cohen, J., *Science*, (1995) 267:960. Two embodiments of the invention are a method for inhibiting or reducing HIV infection in a subject, and a method for decreasing the level of viral  
20 gene expression, each method including administering to the subject an effective amount of a compound of a formula disclosed herein.

Complexes including p50 are rapid mediators of acute inflammatory and immune responses. Thanos, D. and  
25 Maniatis, T., *Cell* (1995) 80:529-532. Intracellular proteolysis generates small peptides for presentation to T-lymphocytes to induce MHC class I-mediated immune responses. The immune system screens for autologous cells that are virally infected or have undergone  
30 oncogenic transformation. Two embodiments of the invention are a method for inhibiting antigen presentation in a cell, including exposing the cell to a compound of a formula described herein, and a method for suppressing the immune system of a subject (e.g.,  
35 inhibiting transplant rejection), including administering

- 85 -

to the subject an effective amount of a compound of a formula described herein.

In addition, the invention provides a method for treating inflammation, wherein the method includes  
5 administering to a subject an effective anti-inflammatory amount of a pharmaceutical composition containing a compound of a formula described herein. Inflammation can be a primary or secondary responses associated with  
10 (a) injury such as a cut, laceration, puncture wound, (b) infection (including infected surgical incisions) by one or more viruses, bacteria, mycobacteria, microorganisms, parasites, and fungi, (c) allergies, (d) a disease state, (e) surgery (e.g., transplantation), or (f) a combination thereof.

15 Allergies are primary inflammatory responses to antigens or allergens. Sources of allergens include plants (e.g., grass or tree pollen), animals (e.g., dander, venom, urine, excreta from dogs, cats, insects, and snakes), and fungi. In addition to allergens such as  
20 rye grass, ragweed, and Japanese cedar pollen, certain foods or food components (e.g., eggs, milk, shellfish, strawberries, chocolate), vaccines, and drugs (e.g., penicillin) can induce allergic reactions in certain individuals.

25 Disease states include rheumatoid arthritis, scleroderma, rheumatic fever, inflammatory bowel disease (e.g., Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis), diabetes mellitus, myasthenia gravis, multiple sclerosis, Guillain-Barre syndrome, conjunctiva of the eye, systemic  
30 lupus erythematosus, encephalitis, Adult Respiratory Distress Syndrome, psoriasis, emphysema, Alzheimer's disease, and muscular dystrophy.

The invention provides a method of treating inflammation induced by organ or tissue transplantation.  
35 This method includes administering to a patient who has

- 86 -

undergone or is about to undergo transplantation a composition containing a compound having a formula disclosed herein. Transplantations include bone marrow, solid organ (e.g., kidney, lungs, heart, pancreas, liver, and skin), or tissues.

Certain proteasome inhibitors block both degradation and processing of ubiquitinated NF- $\kappa$ B in vitro and in vivo. Proteasome inhibitors also block I $\kappa$ B- $\alpha$  degradation and NF- $\kappa$ B activation, Palombella, et al.; and Traenckner, et al., *EMBO J.* (1994) 13:5433-5441. One embodiment of the invention is a method for inhibiting I $\kappa$ B- $\alpha$  degradation, including contacting the cell with a compound of a formula described herein. A further embodiment is a method for reducing the cellular content of NF- $\kappa$ B in a cell, muscle, organ, or subject, including contacting the cell, muscle, organ, or subject with a compound of a formula described herein.

Other eukaryotic transcription factors that require proteolytic processing include the general transcription factor TFIIA, herpes simplex virus VP16 accessory protein (host cell factor), virus-inducible IFN regulatory factor 2 protein, and the membrane-bound sterol regulatory element-binding protein 1.

Other embodiments of the invention are methods for affecting cyclin-dependent eukaryotic cell cycles, including exposing a cell (in vitro or in vivo) to a compound of a formula disclosed herein. Cyclins are proteins involved in cell cycle control. The proteasome participates in the degradation of cyclins. Examples of cyclins include mitotic cyclins, G1 cyclins, (cyclin B). Degradation of cyclins enables a cell to exit one cell cycle stage (e.g., mitosis) and enter another (e.g., division). It is believed all cyclins are associated with p34<sup>cdc2</sup> protein kinase or related kinases. The proteolysis targeting signal is localized to amino acids

- 87 -

42-RAALGNISEN-50 (destruction box). There is evidence that cyclin is converted to a form vulnerable to a ubiquitin ligase or that a cyclin-specific ligase is activated during mitosis. Ciechanover, A., *Cell*, (1994) 5 79:13-21. Inhibition of the proteasome inhibits cyclin degradation, and therefore inhibits cell proliferation (e.g., cyclin-related cancers). Kumatori et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* (1990) 87:7071-7075. One embodiment of the invention is a method for treating a proliferative 10 disease in a subject (e.g., cancer, psoriasis, or restenosis), including administering to the subject an effective amount of a compound of a formula disclosed herein. Chronic or acute inflammation can result from transplantation rejection, arthritis, rheumatoid 15 arthritis, infection, dermatosis, inflammatory bowel disease, asthma, osteoporosis, and autoimmune diseases. Rejection or inflammation can occur in transplanted tissues or organs of any type, including heart, lung, kidney, liver, skin grafts, and tissue grafts. The 20 invention also encompasses a method for treating cyclin-related inflammation in a subject, including administering to a subject an effective amount of a compound of a formula described herein.

Additional embodiments are methods for affecting 25 the proteasome-dependent regulation of oncoproteins and methods of treating or inhibiting cancer growth, each method including exposing a cell (*in vivo*, e.g., in a subject or *in vitro*) to a compound of a formula disclosed herein. HPV-16 and HPV-18-derived E6 proteins stimulate 30 ATP- and ubiquitin-dependent conjugation and degradation of p53 in crude reticulocyte lysates. The recessive oncogene p53 has been shown to accumulate at the nonpermissive temperature in a cell line with a mutated thermolabile E1. Elevated levels of p53 may lead to 35 apoptosis. Examples of proto-oncoproteins degraded by

- 88 -

the ubiquitin system include c-Mos, c-Fos, and c-Jun. One embodiment is a method for treating p53-related apoptosis, including administering to a subject an effective amount of a compound of a formula disclosed  
5 herein.

Treatment of cancer prevents, alleviates, or ameliorates one or more primary or secondary phenomena associated with the initiation, progression, and metastasis of tumors, especially malignant tumors, e.g.,  
10 a growth of tissue wherein cell multiplication is uncontrolled. Malignant tumors show a greater degree of anaplasia than do benign tumors. The invention provides a method of treating cancer including administering to a subject an effective anti-cancer amount of a  
15 pharmaceutical composition described herein, wherein the cancer is selected from carcinoma, lymphoma, sarcoma, and myeloma.

Examples of carcinomas include adenocarcinoma, acinic cell adenocarcinoma, adrenal cortical carcinomas,  
20 alveoli cell carcinoma, anaplastic carcinoma, basaloid carcinoma, basal cell carcinoma, bronchiolar carcinoma, bronchogenic carcinoma, renaladinoi carcinoma, embryonal carcinoma, anometroid carcinoma, fibrolamolar liver cell carcinoma, follicular carcinomas, giant cell carcinomas,  
25 hepatocellular carcinoma, intraepidermal carcinoma, intraepithelial carcinoma, leptomanigio carcinoma, medullary carcinoma, melanotic carcinoma, menigual carcinoma, mesometonephric carcinoma, oat cell carcinoma, squamal cell carcinoma, sweat gland carcinoma,  
30 transitional cell carcinoma, and tubular cell carcinoma. Examples of sarcoma include amelioblastic sarcoma, angiolithic sarcoma, botryoid sarcoma, endometrial stroma sarcoma, ewing sarcoma, fascicular sarcoma, giant cell sarcoma, granulocytic sarcoma, immunoblastic sarcoma,  
35 juxaccordial osteogenic sarcoma, coppices sarcoma,

- 89 -

- leukocytic sarcoma (also known as leukemia), lymphatic sarcoma (also known as lympho sarcoma), medullary sarcoma, myeloid sarcoma (also known as granulocytic sarcoma), auestiogeneci sarcoma, periosteal sarcoma,
- 5 reticulum cell sarcoma (also known as histiocytic lymphoma), round cell sarcoma, spindle cell sarcoma, synovial sarcoma, and telangiectatic audiogenic sarcoma. Examples of lymphomas include Hodgkin's disease and lymphocytic lymphomas, such as Burkitt's, nodular poorly-
- 10 differentiated lymphocytic (NPDL), nodular mixed lymphocytic (NML), NH (nodular histiocytic), and diffuse lymphomas. Additional carcinomas include neural blastoma, glioblastoma, astrocytoma, melanoma, leiomyo sarcoma, multiple myeloma, and Hemangioma.
- 15 A tripeptide aldehyde protease inhibitor (benzyloxycarbonyl (Z)-Leu-Leu-leucinal induces neurite outgrowth in PC12 cells at an optimal concentration of 30 nM, Tsubuki et al., *Biochem. and Biophys. Res. Comm.* (1993) 196:1195-1201. Peptide aldehydes have been shown
- 20 to inhibit the chymotryptic activity of the proteasome. Vinitzsky, et al., 1992, Tsubuki et al., 1993. One embodiment of the invention is a method of promoting neurite outgrowth, including administering to the subject a compound of a formula disclosed herein.
- 25 Finally, the disclosed compounds are also useful as diagnostic agents (e.g., in diagnostic kits or for use in clinical laboratories) for screening for proteins (e.g., enzymes, transcription factors) processed by the proteasome. The disclosed compounds are also useful as
- 30 research reagents for specifically binding the X/MB1 subunit or  $\alpha$ -chain and inhibiting the proteolytic activities associated with it. For example, the activity of (and specific inhibitors of) other subunits of the proteasome can be determined.

- 90 -

Most cellular proteins are subject to proteolytic processing during maturation or activation. Lactacystin can be used to determine whether a cellular, developmental, or physiological process or output is regulated by the proteolytic activity of the proteasome. One such method includes obtaining an organism, an intact cell preparation, or a cell extract; exposing the organism, cell preparation, or cell extract to a compound of a formula disclosed herein; exposing the compound-exposed organism, cell preparation, or cell extract to a signal, and monitoring the process or output. The high selectivity of the compounds disclosed herein permits rapid and accurate elimination or implication of the proteasome in a given cellular, developmental, or physiological process.

The compounds and compositions of the invention are useful in several methods including a method of treating inflammation, comprising administering to a subject an effective anti-inflammatory amount of a pharmaceutical composition described herein (e.g., a lactacystin thioester, a lactone, or a lactam); wherein the inflammation is associated with injury or infection; wherein the inflammation is associated with an allergy or asthma; wherein the inflammation is associated with a disease state selected from rheumatoid arthritis, scleroderma, rheumatic fever, inflammatory bowel disease, diabetes mellitus, myasthenia gravis, multiple sclerosis, Guillan-Barre syndrome, conjunctiva of the eye, systemic lupus erythematosus, encephalitis, Adult Respiratory Distress Syndrome, emphysema, Alzheimer's disease, and muscular dystrophy; wherein the inflammation is associated with transplantation of bone marrow or a solid organ selected from kidney, lung, heart, pancreas, liver, and skin, and the composition is administered before, during, or after transplantation; wherein the

- 91 -

pharmaceutical composition is administered orally; or combinations thereof.

The invention also provides a method of treating cancer, comprising administering to a subject an effective anti-cancer amount of a pharmaceutical composition described herein; a method for treating psoriasis, comprising administering to a subject an effective amount of a pharmaceutical composition described herein; and a method for treating restenosis, comprising administering to a subject an effective amount of a pharmaceutical composition described herein. Preferred compounds and compositions include various lactacystin thioesters, and lactacystin  $\beta$ -lactone analogs, including the  $\beta$ -lactone itself.

#### 15 Formulation and Administration

The methods of the invention contemplate treatment of animal subjects, such as mammals (e.g., higher primates, and especially humans). The invention encompasses pharmaceutical compositions which include novel compounds described herein, and pharmaceutical compositions which include compounds described and first recognized herein as proteasome inhibitors, such as lactacystin.

Pharmaceutically acceptable salts may be formed, for example, with 1, 2, 3, or more equivalents of hydrogen chloride, hydrogen bromide, trifluoroacetic acid, and others known to those in the art of drug formulation. Compounds of the invention can be formulated into pharmaceutical compositions by admixture with pharmaceutically acceptable non-toxic excipients and carriers. A pharmaceutical composition of the invention may contain more than one compound of the invention, and/or may also contain other therapeutic compounds not encompassed by the invention, such as anti-inflammatory, anti-cancer, or other agents. A subject may have more



- 92 -

than one type of inflammation, or more than one type of cancer, a combination of allergies, or a mixture of the above conditions for which the disclosed compounds are useful. A compound of the invention may be administered  
5 in unit dosage form, and may be prepared by any of the methods well known in the pharmaceutical art, for example, as described in *Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* (Mack Pub. Co., Easton, PA, 1980). The invention also encompasses a packaged drug, containing a  
10 pharmaceutical composition formulated into individual dosages and printed instructions for self-administration.

Compounds disclosed herein as proteasome inhibitors may be prepared for use in parenteral administration in the form of solutions or liquid  
15 suspensions; for oral administration (preferable), particularly in the form of tablets or capsules; or intranasally, particularly in the form of powders, gels, oily solutions, nasal drops, aerosols, or mists. Formulations for parenteral administration may contain as  
20 common excipients sterile water or sterile saline, polyalkylene glycols such as polyethylene glycol, oils of vegetable origin, hydrogenated naphthalenes, and the like. Controlled release of a compound of the invention may be obtained, in part, by use of biocompatible,  
25 biodegradable polymers of lactide, and copolymers of lactide/glycolide or polyoxyethylene/ polyoxypropylene. Additional parental delivery systems include ethylene-vinyl acetate copolymer particles, osmotic pumps, implantable infusion systems, and liposomes.  
30 Formulations for inhalation administration contain lactose, polyoxyethylene-9-lauryl ether, glycocholate, or deoxycholate. Formulations for buccal administration may include glycocholate; formulations for vaginal administration may include citric acid.

**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**

- 93 -

The concentration of a disclosed compound in a pharmaceutically acceptable mixture will vary depending on several factors, including the dosage of the compound to be administered, the pharmacokinetic characteristics of the compound(s) employed, and the route of administration. In general, the compounds of this invention may be provided in an aqueous physiological buffer solution containing about 0.1-10% w/v of compound for parenteral administration. Typical dose ranges are from about 0.1 to about 50 mg/kg of body weight per day, given in 1-4 divided doses. Each divided dose may contain the same or different compounds of the invention. The dosage will be an effective amount depending on several factors including the overall health of a patient, and the formulation and route of administration of the selected compound(s).

The effective amount of the active compound used to practice the present invention for treatment of conditions directly or indirectly mediated by the proteasome varies depending upon the manner of administration, the age and the body weight of the subject and the condition of the subject to be treated, and ultimately will be decided by the attending physician or veterinarian. Such amount of the active compound as determined by the attending physician or veterinarian is referred to herein as "effective amount".

Without further elaboration, it is believed that one skilled in the art can, based on the description herein, utilize the present invention to its fullest extent. The following specific examples are, therefore, to be construed as merely illustrative, and not limitative of the remainder of the disclosure in any way whatsoever. All publications cited herein are hereby incorporated by reference.

- 94 -

## EXAMPLES

## Example 1

Synthesis of [<sup>3</sup>H] lactacystin

Lactacystin was prepared from the  $\beta$ -lactone, which  
5 was tritiated by an oxidation-reduction sequence.  
Unlabeled  $\beta$ -lactone was oxidized at C9 to the ketone with  
the Dess-Martin periodinane in dichloromethane and then  
reduced with [<sup>3</sup>H]NaBH<sub>4</sub> (NEN, 13.5 Ci/mmol) in 1,2-  
dimethoxyethane/1% H<sub>2</sub>O to afford tritiated  $\beta$ -lactone  
10 along with its C9-epimer (2:3 ratio). The isomeric  
 $\beta$ -lactones were separated by HPLC (Rainin Microsorb SiO<sub>2</sub>  
column, 4.6 x 100 mm, 10% i-Pr-OH in hexane) and reacted  
separately with *N*-acetylcysteine (0.5 M) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (1.5 M)  
in CH<sub>3</sub>CN to afford the lactacystin (9S) and its C9-epimer  
15 (9R), which were purified from their respective reaction  
mixtures by reverse-phase HPLC (TSK ODS-80T<sub>m</sub> column, 4.6  
x 250 mm, 10% CH<sub>3</sub>CN/0.1% CF<sub>3</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H in H<sub>2</sub>O).

## Example 2

Fluorography of crude cell and tissue extracts

20 Crude Neuro 2A extracts (~11  $\mu$ g total  
protein/lane) and crude bovine brain extracts (~54  $\mu$ g  
total protein/lane) were treated as follows: (1) 10  $\mu$ M  
[<sup>3</sup>H]lactacystin; (2) 10  $\mu$ M [<sup>3</sup>H]lactacystin and 1 mM cold  
lactacystin; (3) 10  $\mu$ M [<sup>3</sup>H]lactacystin; (4) 10  $\mu$ M  
25 [<sup>3</sup>H]lactacystin and 1 mM cold lactacystin; (5) 10  $\mu$ M  
[<sup>3</sup>H]lactacystin and 1 mM cold  $\beta$ -lactone; (6) 10  $\mu$ M  
[<sup>3</sup>H]lactacystin and 1 mM cold phenylacetyl lactacystin;  
(7) 10  $\mu$ M [<sup>3</sup>H]lactacystin and 1 mM cold lactacystin  
amide; (8) 10  $\mu$ M [<sup>3</sup>H]lactacystin and 1 mM cold dihydroxy  
30 acid; (9) 10  $\mu$ M [<sup>3</sup>H]lactacystin and 1 mM cold 6-  
deoxylactacystin; (10) 10  $\mu$ M [<sup>3</sup>H]lactacystin and 1 mM  
cold (6R,7S)-lactacystin (6-*epi*, 7-*epi*); (11) 10  $\mu$ M  
[<sup>3</sup>H]lactacystin and 1 mM cold des(hydroxyisobutyl)-  
lactacystin. Crude extracts from Neuro2A neuroblastoma

- 95 -

cells or bovine brain were incubated in the presence of 10  $\mu$ M [ $^3$ H]lactacystin in the presence or absence of 1 mM cold competitor (added simultaneously) for 24 h at room temperature, followed by SDS-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (0.75-mm-thick 12% polyacrylamide gel). The gel was stained in 0.1% Coomassie brilliant blue R-250, 12% acetic acid, 50% MeOH, and then destained in 12% acetic acid, 50% MeOH, followed by impregnation with EN $^3$ HANCE (NEN) and precipitation of the fluor with water. The gel was dried on Whatman filter paper in a gel dryer at 65°C for 30 min and then exposed to Kodak SB film at -78°C.

### Example 3

#### Separation of purified protein complex (20S proteasome)

15 Bovine brain was frozen in liquid N $_2$ . A total of two kg of brain was dry homogenized in a Waring blender for one minute. All operations were performed at 4°C, except as noted. The following buffer (6 liters total) was then added (pH 7.7): 18.25 mM K $_2$ HPO $_4$ , 6.75 mM KH $_2$ PO $_4$ , 20 0.27 M sucrose, 2 mM EDTA, 2 mM EGTA, 25 mM NaF, 5 mM tetrasodium pyrophosphate, 5  $\mu$ g/ml each of leupeptin and pepstatin A, and 5 mM  $\beta$ -mercaptoethanol. The tissue was wet homogenized in the Waring blender for two minutes. The homogenate was centrifuged at 5,000 g for 15 min and 25 then at 12,000 g for 30 min. Ammonium sulfate was added to the supernatant to 50% saturation, and the sample spun at 10,000 g for 20 min. The 50-60% saturation ammonium sulfate fraction, containing the lactacystin-binding activity as determined by SDS-PAGE and fluorography of 30 samples incubated with radioactive compound, was then dialyzed overnight against 20 mM MES-NaOH, pH 5.6, 5 mM  $\beta$ -mercaptoethanol, followed by SP-sepharose chromatography (Pharmacia SP-sepharose, fast flow; 120-ml bed volume column) with 20 mM MES-NaOH, pH 5.6, 5 mM

- 96 -

$\beta$ -mercaptoethanol and an NaCl gradient from 0-0.3 M (500-ml gradient; flow rate = 2 ml/min).

After pooling and diluting the relevant fractions, the pH was adjusted to 8 with 1 M Tris-HCl, pH 8.

- 5 Q-sepharose chromatography (Pharmacia Q-sepharose, fast flow; 16-ml bed volume column) was performed with 20 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8, 5 mM  $\beta$ -mercaptoethanol and a NaCl gradient from 0-0.5 M (120-ml gradient; flow rate = 1 ml/min). The relevant fractions were pooled,
- 10 concentrated, and then applied to a Pharmacia Superose 6 gel filtration column (10 mM Tris-HCl, 1 mM EDTA, pH 8, 5 mM  $\beta$ -mercaptoethanol; flow rate = 0.5 ml/min), with the lactacystin-binding activity corresponding to a single high molecular weight peak. This peak was isolated and
- 15 treated with 10  $\mu$ M [ $^3$ H]lactacystin or 10  $\mu$ M [ $^3$ H] $\beta$ -lactone for 24 h at 25°C. Trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) was added to 0.1%, and the sample was allowed to stand at room temperature for 20 min. Reverse-phase HPLC was then carried out at room temperature using a Vydac C4 column
- 20 (300 Å/4.6 x 150 mm) with 20-40% acetonitrile/0.1% TFA over 10 min and then 40-55% acetonitrile/0.1% TFA over 30 min (flow rate = 0.8 ml/min). An IN/US  $\beta$ -RAM in-line scintillation detector was used to monitor radioactivity.

- The lactacystin-binding proteins were purified
- 25 from bovine brain, and both were found to reside in the same high-molecular weight protein complex by gel-filtration chromatography. Treatment of the complex with [ $^3$ H]lactacystin did not cause its dissociation, and the radioactivity uniquely comigrated with the complex. The
- 30 molecular weight of the complex was estimated to be 700 kDa, and SDS-PAGE revealed that it consisted of numerous proteins with molecular weights of ~24-32 kDa. Edman degradation of blotted protein revealed the sequences of several proteasome subunits in the 24 kDa
- 35 band, leading to a tentative identification of the

- 97 -

complex as the 20S proteasome. After the complex was treated with [ $^3\text{H}$ ]lactacystin and subjected to reverse-phase HPLC to separate the proteasome subunits, eleven to twelve distinct peaks were resolved. However, the

5 radioactivity was associated exclusively with the first two peaks, and predominantly with the second. These first two peaks were judged to be homogeneous by Coomassie blue staining of SDS-polyacrylamide gels and by sequencing of tryptic fragments, while some of the

10 subsequently eluting, larger peaks were clearly not homogeneous. The ratio of counts incorporated into the first peak versus the second peak varied with the batch of protein, the length of incubation, and the ligand. The first peak is labeled more slowly, and the degree of

15 labeling of the first peak relative to the second is greater with [ $^3\text{H}$ ]lactacystin than with the [ $^3\text{H}$ ] $\beta$ -lactone at any given time. A one or two hour reaction with [ $^3\text{H}$ ] $\beta$ -lactone results in only trace labeling of the first peak, while a 24 hour reaction with [ $^3\text{H}$ ] $\beta$ -lactone or

20 [ $^3\text{H}$ ]lactacystin results in significant labeling of this peak. The selectivity runs opposite to the relative chemical reactivity of the two compounds, and this finding suggests that the *N*-acetylcysteine moiety of lactacystin may facilitate recognition by this secondary

25 protein. The first peak to elute from the reverse-phase HPLC column contained only a ~32 kDa protein, which corresponded to the 32 kDa secondary lactacystin-binding protein identified earlier.

#### Example 4

30 Amino acid sequence of purified bovine lactacystin-binding proteins

Purified 20S proteasome (purified as described in Example 3) was incubated for 24 h at room temperature with 10  $\mu\text{M}$  lactacystin in 10 mM Tris-HCl, 1 mM EDTA

- 98 -

(pH 8). The solution was then diluted tenfold with 20% aqueous acetonitrile containing 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) and allowed to stand at room temperature for 5 min. Reverse-phase HPLC was then performed at room temperature using a Vydac C4 column (100 Å/4.6 x 150 mm) with 20-40% acetonitrile/0.1% TFA over ten minutes and then 40-55% acetonitrile/0.1% TFA over 30 min to elute the proteasome subunits (flow rate = 0.8 ml/min). Peaks were collected based on ultraviolet light absorbance at 210 and 280 nm, with the primary lactacystin-modified protein being the second to elute off the column and the secondary lactacystin-binding protein being the first. Protein from repeated injections was pooled, lyophilized and subjected to Edman degradation following tryptic digestion and reverse-phase HPLC separation of tryptic fragments. The putative lactacystin-modified residue was identified by adding subunit X/MB1 isolated from [<sup>3</sup>H]lactacystin-treated proteasome to a sample that had been treated with unlabeled lactacystin, and then isolating and sequencing radioactive tryptic fragments. At one position, the phenylthiohydantoin-amino acid derivative was not identifiable, indicating possible modification of the residue.

Sequences from direct N-terminal sequencing and from tryptic fragments derived from the primary bovine lactacystin-binding protein aligned with sequences of human proteasome subunit X (predicted from the cDNA clone), and human LMP7-E2 (predicted from the exon 2-containing cDNA clone). Sequence 1 (from direct N-terminal sequencing) is also aligned with sequences of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* Pre-2 (predicted from the genomic clone) and *Thermoplasma acidophilum* β-subunit (predicted from the cloned gene). The N-terminal heptapeptide corresponds to the tryptic fragment that appears to contain a lactacystin-modified N-terminal



- 99 -

threonine residue. The threonine at this position also corresponds to the putative N-termini of the mature, processed forms of all the homologs listed. Upper-case letters denote high confidence sequence, while lower case letters indicate lower confidence assignments.

**Table 1**  
**DIRECT N-TERMINAL SEQUENCES**

---

1. Direct N-terminal sequence of primary bovine lactacystin-binding protein			
	TTTLAFKFRHggIIA	SEQ ID NO: 1	
10 Human subunit X/MB1	5 TTTLAFKFRHGVIVA 19	SEQ ID NO: 2	
Human LMP7-E2	74 TTTLAFKFRHGVIVA 88	SEQ ID NO: 3	
<i>S. cerevisiae</i> Pre-2	76 TTTLAFRFGGGIIVA 90	SEQ ID NO: 4	
<i>T. acidophilum</i> $\beta$ -subunit	9 TTTVGITLKDVAIMA 23	SEQ ID NO: 5	
2. Primary bovine lactacystin-binding protein			
15	DAYSGGSVSLY	SEQ ID NO: 6	
Human subunit X	171 DAYSGGAVNLYHVR 184	SEQ ID NO: 7	
Human LMP7-E2	239 DSYSGGVVNMVYHK 252	SEQ ID NO: 8	
3. Primary bovine lactacystin-binding protein			
	VIEINPYLLGTHAGGAADCSF	SEQ ID NO: 9	
20 Human subunit X	38 VIEINPYLLGTLAGGAADCQFWER 61	SEQ ID NO: 10	
Human LMP7-E2	106 VIEINPYLLGTMSGCAADCQYWER 129	SEQ ID NO: 11	
4. Primary bovine lactacystin-binding protein			
	GYSYDLEVERAYDLAR	SEQ ID NO: 12	
Human subunit X	146 GYSYDLEVEQAYDLAR 161	SEQ ID NO: 13	
25 Human LMP7-E2	214 GYRPNLSPEEAYDLGR 229	SEQ ID NO: 14	

---

Sequences of tryptic fragments derived from the secondary lactacystin-binding protein aligned with N-terminal fragment sequence of human erythrocyte proteasome  $\alpha$  chain and of rat liver proteasome chain.

- 100 -

**Table 2**  
**TRYPTIC FRAGMENT SEQUENCES**

---

Secondary bovine lactacystin-binding activity		
	TTIAGVVYK DGIVLGADTR	SEQ ID NO: 15
5	Human erythrocyte proteasome $\alpha$ chain	
	1 XXIAGVVYK DGIVLGADTR 19	SEQ ID NO: 16
	Rat liver proteasome chain 1	
	1 TTIAGVVYK DGI 12	SEQ ID NO: 17

---

Sequence analysis of tryptic fragments derived from this  
10 protein showed it to be homologous to the proteasome  
 $\alpha$  chain, a ~30 kDa protein identified in purified human  
erythrocyte proteasome and rat liver proteasome for which  
only an N-terminal fragment sequence exists. The second  
peak to elute contained only a ~24 kDa protein, the  
15 primary lactacystin-binding protein. Sequence from the  
N-terminus of the protein and from derived tryptic  
fragments showed high identity to the recently discovered  
20S proteasome subunit X, also known as MB1, a homolog of  
the major histocompatibility complex (MHC)-encoded LMP7  
20 proteasome subunit.

- 101 -

### Example 5

#### Kinetics of inhibition of 20S proteasome peptidase activities

Experiments involving the proteasome were performed as follows: 20S proteasome (~5 ng/ $\mu$ l) in 10 mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.5, 1 mM EDTA was incubated at 25°C in the presence of lactacystin or lactacystin analogs in DMSO or MeOH [not exceeding 5% (v/v)]. Aliquots for fluorescence assay were removed at various times following addition of compound and diluted in 10 mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.5, 1 mM EDTA containing fluorogenic peptide substrates (100  $\mu$ M final). Suc-LLVY-AMC, Cbz-GGR- $\beta$ NA and Cbz-LLE- $\beta$ NA (AMC = 7-amido-4-methylcoumarin;  $\beta$ NA =  $\beta$ -naphthylamide) were used to assay for the chymotrypsin-like, trypsin-like and peptidylglutamyl-peptide hydrolyzing activities, respectively.

Biological activity of compound refers to the ability of the compound to induce neurite outgrowth in Neuro 2A neuroblastoma cells and to inhibit cell cycle progression in MG-63 osteosarcoma cells.

- 102 -

**Table 3**  
**Kinetics of Inhibition**

Compound (concentration)	Biological activity of compound	$k_{\text{assoc}} = k_{\text{obs}}/[I] \text{ (s}^{-1}\text{M}^{-1}\text{)}$		
		Chymotrypsin-like activity (Suc-LLVY-AMC)	Trypsin-like activity (Cbz-GGR- $\beta$ NA)	Peptidylglutamyl-peptide hydrolyzing activity (Cbz-LLE- $\beta$ NA)
Lactacystin (10 $\mu$ M)	+	194 $\pm$ 15	10.1 $\pm$ 1.8	
5 Lactacystin (100 $\mu$ M)	+			4.2 $\pm$ 0.6
$\beta$ -Lactone (1 $\mu$ M)	+	3059 $\pm$ 478		
$\beta$ -Lactone (5 $\mu$ M)	+		208 $\pm$ 21	
$\beta$ -Lactone (50 $\mu$ M)	+			59 $\pm$ 17
Dihydroxy acid (100 $\mu$ M)	-	No inhibition	No inhibition	No inhibition
10 Lactacystin amide (12.5 $\mu$ M)	+	306 $\pm$ 99		
Phenylacetyl lactacystin (12.5 $\mu$ M)	+	179 $\pm$ 19		
6-Deoxylactacystin (12.5 $\mu$ M)	-	No inhibition		
15 (6R,7S)Lactacystin (6- <del>epi</del> ,7- <del>epi</del> ) (12.5 $\mu$ M)	-	No inhibition		
Des(hydroxyisobutyl)-lactacystin (12.5 $\mu$ M)	-	No inhibition		

**Example 6****20 Selectivity of protease inhibition**

Experiments involving the other proteases were similar to Example 5, except that buffers used for incubation with lactacystin were as follows:  $\alpha$ -Chymotrypsin: 10 mM Tris-HCL, pH 8, 1 mM EDTA (plus 100  $\mu$ M Suc-LLVY-AMC for fluorescence assay); Trypsin: 10 mM

- 103 -

Tris-HCL, pH 8, 20 mM CaCl<sub>2</sub> (plus 100  $\mu$ M Cbz-GGR- $\beta$ NA for assay); Calpain I: 20 mM Tris-HCL, pH 8, 1 mM CaCl<sub>2</sub>, 1 mM DTT (plus 100  $\mu$ M Suc-LLVY-AMC for assay); Calpain II: 20 mM Tris-HCL, pH 8, 10 mM CaCl<sub>2</sub>, 1 mM DTT (plus 100  $\mu$ M Suc-LLVY-AMC for assay); Papain: 50 mM MES-NaOH, pH 6.4, 1 mM DTT (plus 100  $\mu$ M Cbz-RR-AMC for assay); Cathepsin B: 100 mM KH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>, pH 5.5, 2 mM EDTA, 1 mM DTT (plus 100  $\mu$ M Cbz-RR-AMC for assay). Fluorescent emission at 460 nm with excitation at 380 nm was measured for AMC-containing substrates, and emission at 410 nm with excitation at 335 nm was measured for  $\beta$ NA-containing substrates. The fluorescence assays were conducted at 25°C, each experiment was performed at least three times, and values represent mean  $\pm$  standard deviation.

15

Table 4

## Inhibition of Other Proteases

Protease tested	Effect of lactacystin (100 $\mu$ M)
$\alpha$ -Chymotrypsin	No inhibition
Trypsin	No inhibition
Calpain I	No inhibition
Calpain II	No inhibition
Papain	No inhibition
Cathepsin B	No inhibition

The effects of lactacystin and the  $\beta$ -lactone on proteasome peptidase on activities using fluorogenic peptide substrates were assessed. All three peptidase activities were inhibited, irreversibly in the case of the trypsin-like and chymotrypsin-like activities and reversibly in the case of the PGPH activity. The

- 104 -

apparent second-order rate constant for association of each inhibitor with the enzyme,  $k_{\text{assoc}}$ , was determined for each of the activities (Table 1A). Lactacystin inhibits the chymotrypsin-like activity the fastest ( $k_{\text{assoc}} = 194 \pm$   
5  $15 \text{ M}^{-1}\text{s}^{-1}$ ), the trypsin-like activity 20-fold more slowly, and the PGPH activity 50-fold more slowly. The fact that the inhibition kinetics are different for the three activities lends further support to the notion that the activities are due to separate active sites. The  $\beta$ -  
10 lactone displays the same rank order but inhibits each activity 15-20 times faster than does lactacystin itself, in accord with the greater expected chemical reactivity of the  $\beta$ -lactone. It is also possible that, upon initial binding to the protein target, the lactacystin thioester  
15 is cyclized in a rate-limiting step to the  $\beta$ -lactone, which serves as an activated intermediate for attack by the nucleophile.

The reversibility of the inhibitory effects was assessed by measuring residual peptidase activity after  
20 removal of excess inhibitor by extensive serial dilution/ultrafiltration. The trypsin-like and chymotrypsin-like activities were still completely inhibited in the lactacystin-treated samples following dilution/ultrafiltration, implying very low  $k_{\text{off}}$  of  
25 inhibitor from enzyme, whereas controls untreated with inhibitor maintained activity (data not shown). In the case of the PGPH activity, removal of the inhibitor was accompanied by a return of the catalytic activity; inhibition of the PGPH activity could be due to non-  
30 covalent association of lactacystin with the PGPH site or covalent association with turnover.

Previously, we had shown that the ability of analogs to cause neurite outgrowth in Neuro 2A cells was mirrored by their ability to inhibit cell-cycle  
35 progression in MG-63 osteosarcoma cells, and that

- 105 -

modifications to the  $\gamma$ -lactam part of the molecule impaired both activities whereas modifications of the *N*-acetylcysteine moiety had little effect [Fenteany, 1994 3135]. We therefore tested the ability of the analogs to inhibit the 20S proteasome, but as our supplies of these materials were insufficient to examine all three activities, we focused on the chymotrypsin-like activity, which is inhibited most rapidly by lactacystin. The same trends found in the biological studies were apparent:

the biologically active compounds inhibited the chymotrypsin-like activity about as well as lactacystin itself, and the biologically inactive compounds did not inhibit this activity as all (Table 3). Modifications of the  $\gamma$ -lactam core of lactacystin mitigate its effect, but modifications of the *N*-acetylcysteine moiety do not.

#### Example 7

##### Assay of the ability of lactacystin ( $\beta$ -lactone form) can block TNF- $\alpha$ dependent degradation of I $\kappa$ B- $\alpha$ in vivo.

Hela cells were plated onto 6-well plates in DME plus 10% fetal calf serum (3 mls/well). Cells were then pretreated with 0.125% DMSO 40  $\mu$ M G132 (carbobenzoxyl-leucinyll-leucinyll-leucinal-H) (40  $\mu$ M, lanes 103), or 5  $\mu$ M  $\beta$ -lactone for one hour, followed by treatment with 1,000 U/ml TNF- $\alpha$  or phosphate buffered saline (PBS).

Cells were harvested after 0 min, 20 min, or 40 min of further incubation at 37°C. Cells were then lysed in buffer containing NP-40 and protease inhibitors, and the proteins separated on a 10% SDS-polyacrylamide gel. The proteins were then transferred to nitrocellulose and probed with antibodies against the C-terminal 20 amino acids of human I $\kappa$ B- $\alpha$ .

Previous reports have shown that the inducible degradation of I $\kappa$ B is preceded by phosphorylation of the protein (Beg et al., 1993, Mol. Cell. Biol. 13:3301;

- 106 -

Traenckner et al., 1994, EMBO J. 13:5433; Miyamoto et al., 1994, PNAS 91:12740; Lin et al., 1995, PNAS 92:552; DiDonato et al., 1995, Mol. Cell. Biol. 15:1302; and Alkalay et al., 1995, Mol. Cell. Biol. 15:1294). The phosphorylated I $\kappa$ B is then preferentially degraded, apparently by the proteasome (Palombella et al., 1994, Cell 78:773). Phosphorylation is evidenced by a slightly heavier shift in the electrophoretic mobility of I $\kappa$ B. I $\kappa$ B from cells induced with TNF show the requisite pattern of phosphorylation and degradation over time. Cells treated with PBS only show no change in the level or modification of I $\kappa$ B. As was reported previously, (Palombella et al., 1994), the peptide aldehyde proteasome inhibitor MG132 blocks the degradation of I $\kappa$ B and stabilizes the phosphorylated form.  $\beta$ -lactone also blocks degradation and stabilizes the phosphorylated form of I $\kappa$ B. These results indicate that lactacystin does not effect the TNF dependent signalling pathway that leads to the phosphorylation of I $\kappa$ B, but does block the degradation of the protein. Lactacystin inhibits the degradation of I $\kappa$ B after TNF induction of Hela cells, most likely by specifically blocking the action of the proteasome.

#### Example 8

##### 25 Assay of the effect of lactacystin ( $\beta$ -lactone form) on the proteasome dependent p105 to p50 processing in vivo.

COS cells were plated onto 100 mm dishes, then, with DEAE-Dextran, either mock transfected, or transfected with 3  $\mu$ g of pcDNA plasmid containing the human p105 cDNA. Forty-eight hrs after transfection, cells were pretreated for 1 hour with 0.5% DMSO, 50  $\mu$ M calpain inhibitor II, 50  $\mu$ M MG132, or 10  $\mu$ M  $\beta$ -lactone. Cells were then pulse labelled with 250 uCi/plate of  $^{35}$ S-



- 107 -

methionine/cysteine for 15 minutes, and either harvested immediately or followed by a 2 hour chase with excess unlabelled methionine and cysteine. Cells were then lysed with SDS/Tris, and proteins were immunoprecipitated  
5 with anti-p50 antibodies (recognize the N-terminal half of the p105 protein). These proteins were then separated on a 10% SDS-polyacrylamide gel, which was then fixed, dried, and exposed to autoradiographic film.

An analysis of the proteins isolated immediately  
10 after the pulse-labelling period reveals significant amounts of labelled p105 protein and very little p50. After the 2 hour chase period, the levels of p105 were reduced, and a new band that corresponds to p50 protein is apparent, as was expected (Fan and Maniatis, 1991,  
15 Nature 354:395; Palombella et al., 1994, Cell 78:773). Pretreatment of cells with calpain inhibitor II has no effect on the processing of p105 to p50 (lane 4). However, treatment of cells with the peptide aldehyde proteasome inhibitor MG132 completely blocks the  
20 appearance of p50 (lane 5), as has been reported previously (Palombella et al., 1994). Low levels of  $\beta$ -lactone (10  $\mu$ M) have only a slight effect on the level of p50, but higher concentrations (50  $\mu$ M) result in the complete inhibition of the processing of p105 to p50.  
25 Lactacystin efficiently blocks the proteasome dependent procession of p105 to p50 in vivo.

#### Example 9

##### Neurite Outgrowth Assay

Compounds are dissolved in the minimal amount of  
30 methanol (MeOH) or dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) required for solubilization. No more than 0.1% solvent is present in any assay. When necessary, solutions are evaporated to dryness and resuspended in cell culture medium to their final concentrations before use.

- 108 -

Neuro 2A, IMR-32, PC12, and MG-63 cells are obtained from the American Type Culture Collection. Neuro 2A and IMR-32 cells are cultured in Eagle's minimal essential medium (MEM) containing 10% (vol/vol) fetal bovine serum (FBS). PC12 cells are grown in RPMI 1640 medium containing 10% (vol/vol) horse serum and 5% FBS, and MG-63 cells are cultured in RPMI 1640 containing 10% FBS.

Neuro 2A cells are plated at a density of  $1 \times 10^4$  cells per 1 ml per well in 12-well polystyrene dishes (22-mm-diameter flat-bottom wells) and are grown for 24 h in MEM with 10% FBS prior to any treatment. In the relevant experiments, nocodazole, cytochalasin B, or cycloheximide is added 3 h before addition of lactacystin. In the serum deprivation experiments, cells are switched to serum-free MEM 24 h after plating and, when relevant, incubated another 24 h before addition of lactacystin and subsequently maintained in serum-free conditions.

20

#### Example 10

##### Cell Cycle Analysis

MG-63 cells are plated at  $7.5 \times 10^4$  cells per 3 ml per 25-cm<sup>2</sup> flask and grown for 24 h in RPMI containing 10% FBS. These subconfluent MG-63 cultures are synchronized in G<sub>0</sub>/G<sub>1</sub> by changing the medium to RPMI containing 0.2% FBS and incubating for 64 h. This is followed by stimulation with 2 ml of RPMI containing 10% FBS and addition of compounds. Neuro 2A cells are grown to  $\sim 2 \times 10^7$  in 175-cm<sup>2</sup> flasks in MEM with 10% FBS. Mitotic cells are harvested by shaking for 5 min at 100 rpm on a rotary shaker. The detached cells are replated at  $1.5 \times 10^5$  cells per 2 ml per 25-cm<sup>2</sup> flask and incubated for 30 min to allow for reattachment prior to addition of lactacystin. Cells are harvested for cell cycle analysis

- 109 -

21 h after stimulation in the case of the MG-63 cells and  
20 h after replating in the case of the Neuro 2A cells  
and then were processed for flow cytometry. DNA  
histograms are obtained using a Becton Dickinson FACScan  
5 flow cytometer.

#### Example 11

##### Purification of 20S Proteasome and Proteasome Activator PA28

20S proteasome was purified by a modification of  
10 procedures by Hough et al. [Hough, R., et al., (1987) *J.*  
*Biol. Chem.*, 262, 8303-8313] and Ganoth et al. [Ganoth,  
D., et al., (1988) *J. Biol. Chem.*, 263, 12412-12419.  
PA28 Activator was purified by a modification of  
procedures of Chu-Ping et al. [Chu-Ping, M., et al.,  
15 (1992) *J. Biol. Chem.*, 267, 10515-10523]. Rabbit  
reticulocytes were obtained from Green Hectares (Oregon,  
WI). The reticulocytes were washed three times by  
suspending them in ice cold PBS and centrifuging at 2000  
xg for 15 min. After the final wash, the cells were  
20 lysed in 1.5 volumes of cold distilled water containing 1  
mM DTT. The mixture was then passed through a Glas-CO  
Bio-Nebulizer at 250 psi to ensure complete cell lysis.  
The lysate was then centrifuged at 100,000 xg for one  
hour to remove cell debris. The supernatant (extract)  
25 was brought to 20 mM HEPES pH 7.6, 1 mM DTT (Buffer A),  
filtered through a 0.2  $\mu$ m filter, and applied to a DE52  
anion exchange column equilibrated in Buffer A. The  
column was washed with 5 volumes of Buffer A and absorbed  
proteins were eluted with 2.5 volumes of Buffer A  
30 containing 500 mM NaCl. The eluate (Fraction II) was  
brought to 38% saturation with ammonium sulfate and  
centrifuged at 10,000 xg for 20 minutes. The supernatant  
was brought to 85% saturation with ammonium sulfate and  
centrifuged 10,000 xg for 20 minutes. The resulting

- 110 -

pellets were resuspended in a minimal volume of Buffer A and dialyzed vs. 4L of Buffer A overnight. The dialysate (Fraction IIB), which contains both 20S proteasome and PA28 activator, was applied to a Mono Q anion exchange column. Elution was performed by a 40 column volume gradient from 0-500 mM NaCl.

#### 20S Proteasome

Column fractions were assayed for SDS-stimulated Suc-Leu-Leu-Val-Tyr-AMC hydrolyzing activity. The active fractions were pooled, diluted to 50 mM [NaCl], and applied to a 1 mL Heparin Sephrose Hi-Trap column. Elution was performed with a 20 column volume gradient from 50 mM-500 mM NaCl. Active fractions were pooled and concentrated using a 30,000 MWCO Centricon centrifugal concentrator. The concentrate was applied to a Superose 6 size exclusion chromatography column and eluted with Buffer A containing 100 mM NaCl. The active fractions that were judged to be pure by SDS-PAGE analysis were pooled and stored at -80° C for subsequent use.

#### 20 PA28

Column fractions (vide supra) were assayed for their ability to stimulate the Suc-Leu-Leu-Val-Tyr-AMC hydrolysing activity of exogenous 20S proteasome. The active fractions were pooled and diluted to 10 mM NaCl. This material was then further purified and concentrated on a 1 ml Resource Q anion exchange column with a 40 column volume gradient from 10-500 mM NaCl. Active fractions were pooled and concentrated using a 10,000 MWCO Centricon centrifugal concentrator. The concentrate was applied to a Superdex 200 size exclusion chromatography column and eluted with Buffer A containing 100 mM NaCl. The active fractions that were judged to be pure by SDS-PAGE analysis were pooled and stored at -80° C for subsequent use.

- 111 -

## Example 12

Lactacystin Inactivation of Proteasome Activity

2 ml of assay buffer (20 mM HEPES, 0.5 mM EDTA, pH 8.0) and Suc-Leu-Leu-Val-Tyr-AMC in DMSO were added to a  
5 3 ml fluorescent cuvette and the cuvette was placed in the jacketed cell holder of a Hitachi F-2000 fluorescence spectrophotometer. The temperature was maintained at 37°C by a circulating water bath. 0.34 µg of proteasome and 3.5 µg of PA28 were added and the reaction progress  
10 was monitored by the increase in fluorescence at 440 nm ( $\lambda_{\text{ex}} = 380 \text{ nm}$ ) that accompanies production of free AMC. The progress curves exhibited a lag-phase lasting 1-2 minutes resulting from the slow formation of the 20S-PA28 complex. After reaching a steady-state of substrate  
15 hydrolysis, lactacystin was added to a final concentration of 1 µM and the reaction was monitored for 1 hr. The fluorescence (F) versus time (t) data were collected on a microcomputer using LAB CALC (Galactic) software.  $k_{\text{inact}}$  values were estimated by a nonlinear  
20 least-squares fit of the data to the first-order equation:

$$F = A(1 - e^{-kt}) + C$$

where  $C = F_{t=0}$  and  $A = F_{t=\infty} - F_{t=0}$ . Owing to the complex kinetics of lactacystin hydrolysis and its mechanism of  
25 inactivation of the proteasome the kinetics of proteasome inactivation are also complex and this fact is reflected in the curve fitting. There was a small systematic deviation of the measured progress curves from the "best-fit" curves generated by fitting the data to the equation  
30 above. Estimates of  $k_{\text{inact}}$  were obtained using this simple kinetic model.

- 112 -

**Example 13****Inhibition of Protein Degradation in C2C12 Cells**

C2C12 cells (a mouse myoblast line) were labeled for 48 hrs with <sup>35</sup>S-methionine. The cells were then  
5 washed and preincubated for 2 hrs in the same media supplemented with 2 mM unlabeled methionine. The media was removed and replaced with a fresh aliquot of the preincubation media containing 50% serum, and a concentration of the compound to be tested. The media  
10 was then removed and made up to 10% TCA and centrifuged. The TCA soluble radioactivity was counted. Inhibition of proteolysis was calculated as the percent decrease in TCA soluble radioactivity. From this data, an IC<sub>50</sub> for each compound was calculated. The compounds can be  
15 qualitatively grouped into ++, +, and 0 categories, wherein wherein ++ indicates better activity than +, and 0 indicates little or no activity, due to insolubility, instability, or other reasons. For example, in the lactacystin group compounds I-1, I-2, and I-3 were in the  
20 ++ category; compound I-4 was in the + category. Turning to the P series of lactone-like compounds, P-1 through P-4 were in the ++ category; compounds P-5 and P-6 were in the + category; and compound P-7 was in the 0 category.

25

**Example 14****Synthesis of Compound I-1**

(3R,4S,5R,1' S)-4-Hydroxy-5(1'-hydroxy-2'-methylpropyl)-3-methylpyrrolidin-2-one-5-carboxylic acid (10.0 mg, 43.2 mmol; made by the route described by Corey, E. J.;  
30 Reichard, G. A., J. Am. Chem. Soc. 1992, 114, 10677) was dissolved in 0.4 mL anhydrous dichloromethane and then treated, in order, with tri-ethylamine (18.0 mL, 0.13 mmol, 3.0 equiv.), 13.0 mg bis(2-oxo-3-oxazolidinyl)-phosphinic chloride (51.1 mmol, 1.2 equiv.) and benzyl

- 113 -

mercaptan (8.0 mL, 68.1 mmol, 1.58 equiv.). The solution was stirred for 5 hours at room temperature and then diluted with dichloromethane and washed with water. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate and the organic layers were combined and dried over magnesium sulfate. Filtration followed by removal of the solvent afforded a crude solid which was triturated with 19:1 hexane/ethyl acetate and collected by filtration. The white solid obtained was then dissolved in a minimum amount of acetonitrile and the clear solution was diluted with water then frozen and lyophilized overnight. This afforded 8.0 mg of the desired thioester I-1 (55%) as a fluffly white solid.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO- $d_6$ , 300 MHz)  $\delta$  8.34 (s, 1H, NH), 7.19-7.28 (m, 5H), 5.40 (d, 1H,  $^3J = 6.4$  Hz, OH), 5.11 (d, 1H,  $^3J = 7.4$  Hz, OH), 4.39 (t,  $^3J = 6.4$  Hz), 4.04 (s, 2H), 3.76 (t, 1H,  $^3J = 7.4$  Hz), 2.62 (m, 1H), 1.55 (m, 1H), 0.90 (d, 3H,  $^3J = 7.5$  Hz), 0.85 (d, 3H,  $^3J = 6.6$  Hz), 0.66 (d, 3H,  $^3J = 6.8$  Hz).

#### Example 15

##### 20 Synthesis of Compound I-2

To a solution of glutathione (360 mg, 1.17 mmol) in 11 mL of water was added 1.35 mL of 1.004 N sodium hydroxide in water. This solution was then added to a freshly prepared solution of clasto-lactacystin-b-lactone (49.0 mg, 0.23 mmol; made by the route described by Corey, E. J.; Reichard, G. A. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1992, 114, 10677) in 10 mL of acetonitrile. After stirring the solution at room temperature for 4 hours, the pH was adjusted to about pH = 4 by the slow addition of 1 N aqueous hydrochloric acid solution. The acetonitrile was removed in vacuo and the aqueous phase was frozen and lyophilized. The solid obtained was redissolved in water, filtered and lyophilized again. The white solid obtained was purified by reverse phase HPLC [Waters Prep Delta-Pak<sup>®</sup> 19 x 300 mm C18 column

- 114 -

eluting with 98% 0.05% trifluoroacetic acid/H<sub>2</sub>O and 2% 0.05% trifluoroacetic acid/methanol to 80% 0.05% trifluoroacetic acid/H<sub>2</sub>O and 20% 0.05% trifluoroacetic acid/methanol in 65 min at 5 mL/min]. After lyophilizing the pure fractions, 5 glutathione thioester adduct I-2 (48 mg, 40%) was obtained as a fluffly white solid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, 300 MHz) δ 7.73-8.26 (m, 4H), 5.28 (bs, 1H, OH), 5.09 (bs, 1H, OH), 4.44 (m, 1H), 4.37 (bd, 1H, 3J = 5.9 Hz), 3.74 (m, 2H), 3.23 (dd, 1H, J = 13.3, 4.6 Hz), 2.95 (dd, 1H, J = 13.3, 8.8 10 Hz), 2.62 (m, 1H), 2.29-2.32 (m, 2H), 1.98-2.08 (m, 2H), 1.51-1.63 (m, 1H), 0.92 (d, 3H, <sup>3</sup>J = 7.5 Hz), 0.86 (d, 3H, 3J = 6.6 Hz), 0.71 (d, 3H, <sup>3</sup>J = 6.7 Hz).

#### Example 16

##### Synthesis of Compound I-4

15 (3R,4S,5R,1' S)-4-Hydroxy-5(1'-hydroxy-2'-methylpropyl)-3-methylpyrrolidin-2-one-5-carboxylic acid (20.0 mg, 86.5 mmol; made by the route described by Corey, E. J.; Reichard, G. A. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 1992, 114, 10677) was dissolved in 1.0 mL acetonitrile and then treated, at 0°C, 20 with 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (14.0 mL, 93.6 mmol, 1.08 equiv.) followed by benzyl bromide (12.0 mL, 101 mmol, 1.17 equiv.). The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight and was then partitioned between ethyl acetate and water. The aqueous layer was 25 extracted three times with ethyl acetate and the organic layers were then combined and dried over magnesium sulfate. Filtration followed by removal of the solvent afforded a crude solid which was triturated with hexane and collected by filtration. The white solid obtained was then dissolved 30 in a minimum amount of acetonitrile and the clear solution was diluted with water then frozen and lyophilized overnight. This afforded 6.7 mg of the desired ester I-4 (24%) as a fluffly white solid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, 300 MHz) δ 8.02 (s, 1H, NH), 7.31-7.44 (m, 5H), 5.45 (d, 1H, 3J = 6.4 Hz,



- 115 -

OH), 5.11 (d, 1H,  $2J = 12.5$  Hz), 5.03 (d, 1H,  $3J = 7.2$  Hz, OH), 5.00 (d, 1H,  $2J = 12.5$  Hz), 4.31 (t,  $3J = 6.4$  Hz), 3.76 (t, 1H,  $^3J = 7.2$  Hz), 2.68 (m, 1H), 1.52 (m, 1H), 0.89 (d, 3H,  $3J = 7.4$  Hz), 0.85 (d, 3H,  $3J = 6.6$  Hz), 0.67 (d, 5 3H,  $3J = 6.7$  Hz).

#### Example 17

##### Synthesis of Compound P-2

(3S,7aR)-3-Phenyl-5,6,7,7a-tetrahydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-c]oxazol-5-one was prepared in three steps from D-  
10 Pyroglutamic acid by a known procedure (Thottathil, J. K. et al. *J. Org. Chem.* 1986, 51, 3140) and was converted to (3S,7aR)-3-Phenyl-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-c]oxazol-5-one in two steps (selenylation and oxidative elimination) by the method reported by Hamada et al. (*J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1989, 15 111, 1524). (3S,7aR)-3-Phenyl-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-c]oxazol-5-one was then converted to (3S,7S,7aS,1'S)-7a-(1'-acetoxy-2'-methylpropyl)-7-hydroxy-3-phenyl-5,6,7,7a-tetrahydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-c]oxazol-5-one in 6 steps by analogy to the sequence reported by Uno et al. (*J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1994, 20 116, 2139). (3S,7S,7aS,1'S)-7a-(1'-acetoxy-2'-methylpropyl)-7-hydroxy-3-phenyl-5,6,7,7a-tetrahydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-c]oxazol-5-one (70 mg, 0.21 mmol) was dissolved in 1.0 mL pyridine and treated at room temperature with 32.0 mL acetic anhydride (0.34 mmol, 1.6 equiv.). The mixture was 25 stirred at room temperature overnight and the solvent was removed in vacuo affording 77 mg of desired (3S,7S,7aS,1'S)-7a-(1'-acetoxy-2'-methylpropyl)-7-acetoxy-3-phenyl-5,6,7,7a-tetrahydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-c]oxazol-5-one (97%), a yellow oil which was used as such in the following 30 step.

The crude (3S,7S,7aS,1'S)-7a-(1'-acetoxy-2'-methylpropyl)-7-acetoxy-3-phenyl-5,6,7,7a-tetrahydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-c]oxazol-5-one (75 mg, 0.20 mmol) was dissolved in 5 mL methanol and placed under 1 atmosphere of hydrogen in

**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**

- 116 -

the presence of 50 mg 20% palladium hydroxide on carbon. When a TLC analysis (1:1 hexane/ethyl acetate) showed the reaction to be complete, the mixture was filtered and concentrated in vacuo affording 55 mg (97%) of the desired  
5 primary alcohol which without any purification was converted to (4S,5R,1'S)-4-Hydroxy-5-(1'-hydroxy-2'-methylpropyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one-5-carboxylic by a two step sequence (Jones' oxidation, saponification) analogous to the sequence reported by Uno et al. (*J. Am. Chem. Soc.*  
10 1994, 116, 2139).

(4S,5R,1'S)-4-Hydroxy-5-(1'-hydroxy-2'-methylpropyl)-pyrrolidin-2-one-5-carboxylic acid (7.0 mg, 32  $\mu$ mol) was dissolved in 2.0 mL 1:1 acetonitrile/tetrahydrofuran and then treated, at room temperature, with 2-(1H-Benzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyl uronium tetrafluoroborate (11.0 mg, 34  $\mu$ mol, 1.1 equiv.) followed by triethylamine (0.36 mmol, 11 equiv.). The mixture was stirred for 30 min to room temperature and concentrated in vacuo. Flash chromatography (230-400 mesh SiO<sub>2</sub>, elution  
15 with ethyl acetate) finally afforded 3 mg of the pure lactone P-2 (47%) obtained as white solid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, 300 MHz)  $\delta$  8.95 (bs, 1H, NH), 5.64 (d, 1H, <sup>3</sup>J = 6.7 Hz, OH), 5.26 (d, 1H, <sup>3</sup>J = 6.0 Hz, OH), 3.78 (dd, 1H, <sup>3</sup>J = 6.7, 3.5 Hz), 2.81 (dd, 1H, <sup>2</sup>J = 19.2 Hz, <sup>3</sup>J = 6.0 Hz), 2.60 (d, 1H,  
20 <sup>2</sup>J = 19.2 Hz), 1.74 (m, 1H), 0.90 (d, 3H, <sup>3</sup>J = 6.9 Hz), 0.68 (d, 3H, <sup>3</sup>J = 6.8 Hz).

- 117 -

**Example 18****Synthesis of Compound P-3**

Clasto-Lactacystin- $\beta$ -lactone (5.0 mg, 23.4  $\mu$ mol; made by the route described by Corey, E. J.; Reichard, G. A. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1992, 114, 10677) was dissolved in 1.5 mL pyridine and treated, at room temperature with acetic anhydride (40 mL, 0.42 mmol, 18 equiv.). After stirring the solution at room temperature overnight, the pyridine was removed in vacuo with the aid of 2 mL of toluene affording a light brown solid. The solid was washed with three portions of hexane and then filtered giving 5.5 mg of the pure acetate P-3 (93%) obtained as a white solid.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO- $d_6$ , 300 MHz)  $\delta$  9.11 (bs, 1H, NH), 5.33 (d, 1H,  $^3J = 6.1$  Hz), 5.21 (d, 1H,  $^3J = 5.0$  Hz), 2.84 (m, 1H), 2.06 (s, 3H), 1.90 (m, 1H), 1.08 (d, 3H,  $^3J = 7.5$  Hz), 0.87 (d, 3H,  $^3J = 6.9$  Hz), 0.78 (d, 3H,  $^3J = 6.8$  Hz).

**Example 19****Synthesis of Compound P-4**

(3S,7aR)-3-Phenyl-5,6,7,7a-tetrahydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-c]oxazol-5-one was prepared in three steps from D-Pyroglutamic acid by a known procedure (Thottathil, J. K. et al. *J. Org. Chem.* 1986, 51, 3140) and was converted to (3S,7aR)-3-Phenyl-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-c]oxazol-5-one in two steps (selenylation, and oxidative elimination) by the method reported by Hamada et al. (*J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1989, 111, 1524). (3S,7aR)-3-Phenyl-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-c]oxazol-5-one was then converted to (3S,6R,7S,7aS,1'S)-7a-(1'-acetoxy-2'-methylpropyl)-6-hydroxy-7-hydroxy-3-phenyl-5,6,7,7a-tetrahydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-c]oxazol-5-one in 4 steps by analogy to the sequence reported by Uno et al. (*J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1994, 116, 2139).

(3S,6R,7S,7aS,1'S)-7a-(1'-acetoxy-2'-methylpropyl)-6-hydroxy-7-hydroxy-3-phenyl-5,6,7,7a-tetrahydro-1H-pyrrolo[1,2-c]oxazol-5-one was then converted in 4 steps

- 118 -

(acetylation, hydrogenolysis, oxidation and saponification) to (3R,4S,5R,1' S)-4-Hydroxy-5-(1'-hydroxy-2'-methylpropyl)-3-hydroxypyrrolidin-2-one-5-carboxylic acid in the same manner described for making P-2.

- 5 (3R,4S,5R,1' S)-4-Hydroxy-5-(1'-hydroxy-2'-methylpropyl)-3-hydroxypyrrolidin-2-one-5-carboxylic acid (20 mg, 86  $\mu$ mol) was converted to the corresponding  $\beta$ -lactone by the method described for making P-2. This afforded 3 mg of the pure lactone P-4 (16%) obtained as white solid. H NMR
- 10 (DMSO- $d_6$ , 300 MHz)  $\delta$  8.96 (s, 1H, NH), 6.08 (bs, 1H, OH), 5.63 (d, 1H,  $^3J = 6.6$  Hz, OH), 5.12 (d, 1H,  $^3J = 5.7$  Hz), 4.31 (d, 1H,  $^3J = 5.7$  Hz), 3.72 (bt, 1H), 1.70 (m, 1H), 0.88 (d, 3H,  $^3J = 6.9$  Hz), 0.72 (d, 3H,  $^3J = 6.8$  Hz).

#### Example 20

##### 15 Synthesis of Compound P-6

- Clasto-Lactacystin- $\beta$ -lactone (11.8 mg, 55.3  $\mu$ mol; made by the route described by Corey, E. J.; Reichard, G. A. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1992, 114, 10677) was dissolved in 0.4 mL freshly distilled pyridine and treated, at room
- 20 temperature with methanesulfonyl chloride (6.0 mL, 77.5  $\mu$ mol, 1.4 equiv.). The solution was stirred for 2 hours at room temperature, treated with more methanesulfonyl chloride (10.0 mL, 129  $\mu$ mol, 2.3 equiv.) and stirred at room temperature overnight. The dark
- 25 solution was then concentrated in vacuo with 3 x 2 mL of toluene affording a yellow solid. Flash chromatography (230-400 mesh  $SiO_2$ , elution with 1:1 hexane/ethyl acetate) finally afforded 12.6 mg of the pure mesylate P-6 (78%) obtained as fluffy white solid.  $^1H$  NMR ( $CDCl_3$ , 300 MHz)  $\delta$
- 30 6.28 (bs, 1H, NH), 5.27 (d, 1H,  $^3J = 6.1$  Hz), 5.06 (d, 1H,  $^3J = 4.0$  Hz), 3.11 (s, 3H), 2.80-2.89 (m, 1H), 2.24-2.34 (m, 1H), 1.33 (d, 3H,  $^3J = 7.5$  Hz), 1.14 (d, 3H,  $^3J = 7.0$  Hz), 1.05 (d, 3H,  $^3J = 6.8$  Hz).

- 119 -

**OTHER EMBODIMENTS**

From the above description, one skilled in the art can easily ascertain the essential characteristics of the present invention, and without departing from the spirit  
5 and scope thereof, can make various changes and modifications of the invention to adapt it to various usages and conditions. Thus, other embodiments are also within the claims.

- 120 -

## SEQUENCE LISTING

## (1) GENERAL INFORMATION:

- (i) APPLICANT: President and Fellows of Harvard College
- (ii) TITLE OF INVENTION: LACTACYSTIN ANALOGS
- (iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES: 17
- (iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS:
  - (A) ADDRESSEE: Fish & Richardson P.C.
  - (B) STREET: 225 Franklin Street
  - (C) CITY: Boston
  - (D) STATE: MA
  - (E) COUNTRY: USA
  - (F) ZIP: 02110-2804
- (v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM:
  - (A) MEDIUM TYPE: Floppy disk
  - (B) COMPUTER: IBM PC compatible
  - (C) OPERATING SYSTEM: PC-DOS/MS-DOS
  - (D) SOFTWARE: PatentIn Release #1.0, Version #1.30
- (vi) CURRENT APPLICATION DATA:
  - (A) APPLICATION NUMBER: PCT/US96/
  - (B) FILING DATE: 12-APR-1996
  - (C) CLASSIFICATION:
- (vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:
  - (A) APPLICATION NUMBER: US 08/421,583
  - (B) FILING DATE: 12-APR-1995
- (viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION:
  - (A) NAME: Freeman, John W.
  - (B) REGISTRATION NUMBER: 29,066
  - (C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER: 00246/197W01
- (ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION:
  - (A) TELEPHONE: 617/542-5070
  - (B) TELEFAX: 617/542-8906
  - (C) TELEX: 200154

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:1:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
  - (A) LENGTH: 15 amino acids
  - (B) TYPE: amino acid
  - (C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant
  - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:1:

Thr	Thr	Thr	Leu	Ala	Phe	Lys	Phe	Arg	His	Gly	Gly	Ile	Ile	Ala
1				5				10					15	

**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**



- 121 -

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:2:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
(A) LENGTH: 15 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:2:

Thr	Thr	Thr	Leu	Ala	Phe	Lys	Phe	Arg	His	Gly	Val	Ile	Val	Ala
1				5				10						15

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:3:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
(A) LENGTH: 15 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:3:

Thr	Thr	Thr	Leu	Ala	Phe	Lys	Phe	Gln	His	Gly	Val	Ile	Ala	Ala
1				5				10						15

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:4:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
(A) LENGTH: 15 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:4:

Thr	Thr	Thr	Leu	Ala	Phe	Arg	Phe	Gln	Gly	Gly	Ile	Ile	Val	Ala
1				5				10						15

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:5:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
(A) LENGTH: 15 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

- 122 -

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:5:

Thr Thr Thr Val Gly Ile Thr Leu Lys Asp Ala Val Ile Met Ala  
1 5 10 15

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:6:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
(A) LENGTH: 11 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:6:

Asp Ala Tyr Ser Gly Gly Ser Val Ser Leu Tyr  
1 5 10

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:7:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
(A) LENGTH: 14 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:7:

Asp Ala Tyr Ser Gly Gly Ala Val Asn Leu Tyr His Val Arg  
1 5 10

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:8:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
(A) LENGTH: 14 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:8:

Asp Ser Tyr Ser Gly Gly Val Val Asn Met Tyr His Met Lys  
1 5 10

- 123 -

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:9:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 21 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:9:

Val Ile Glu Ile Asn Pro Tyr Leu Leu Gly Thr Met Ala Gly Gly Ala  
1                      5                      10                      15  
Ala Asp Cys Ser Phe  
20

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:10:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 24 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:10:

Val Ile Glu Ile Asn Pro Tyr Leu Leu Gly Thr Leu Ala Gly Gly Ala  
1                      5                      10                      15  
Ala Asp Cys Gln Phe Trp Glu Arg  
20

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:11:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 25 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:11:

Val Ile Glu Ile Asn Pro Pro Tyr Leu Leu Gly Thr Met Ser Gly Cys  
1                      5                      10                      15  
Ala Ala Asp Cys Gln Tyr Trp Glu Arg  
20                      25

- 124 -

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:12:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
(A) LENGTH: 16 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:12:

Gly	Tyr	Ser	Tyr	Asp	Leu	Glu	Val	Glu	Glu	Ala	Tyr	Asp	Leu	Ala	Arg
1				5				10						15	

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:13:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
(A) LENGTH: 15 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:13:

Gly	Tyr	Ser	Asp	Leu	Glu	Val	Glu	Gln	Ala	Tyr	Asp	Leu	Ala	Arg
1				5				10					15	

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:14:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
(A) LENGTH: 16 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:14:

Gly	Tyr	Arg	Pro	Asn	Leu	Ser	Pro	Glu	Glu	Ala	Tyr	Asp	Leu	Gly	Arg
1				5				10						15	

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:15:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
(A) LENGTH: 19 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

- 125 -

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:15:

Thr Thr Ile Ala Gly Val Val Tyr Lys Asp Gly Ile Val Leu Gly Ala  
1 5 10 15

Asp Thr Arg

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:16:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 19 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:16:

Xaa Xaa Ile Ala Gly Val Val Tyr Lys Asp Gly Ile Val Leu Gly Ala  
1 5 10 15

Asp Thr Arg

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:17:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 9 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: not relevant
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:17:

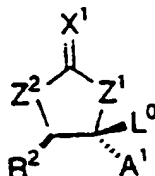
Thr Thr Ile Ala Gly Val Val Tyr Lys  
1 5

- 126 -

What is claimed is:

CLAIMS

1. A compound having the formula



5            wherein Z¹ is O, S, SO₂, NH, or NR<sub>a</sub>, R<sub>a</sub> being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl;

          X¹ is O, S, CH₂, two singly bonded H, CH(R<sub>b</sub>) in the E or Z configuration, or C(R<sub>b</sub>)(R<sub>c</sub>) in the E or Z configuration, each of R<sub>b</sub> and R<sub>c</sub>, independently, being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heterocyclic radical, or halogen, X¹ being two singly bonded H when Z¹ is SO₂;

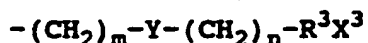
          Z² is O, S, NH, NR<sub>d</sub>, CHR¹, or CHOR¹ in the (R) or (S) configuration, wherein R<sub>d</sub> is C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl and R¹ is H, halogen, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, NR<sub>d</sub>R<sub>e</sub> (except where Z² is CHOR¹), or the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid, or R¹ and R² taken together are a bivalent moiety, provided that when R¹ and R² are taken together, Z¹ is NH or NR<sub>a</sub> and Z² is CHR¹; R<sub>e</sub> being H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, or C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, and the bivalent moiety forming a C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heterocyclic radical, or C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl, where the H in CHR¹ is deleted when R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>2</sub> taken together form a C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl or C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl;

25            R² is C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, azido, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, halogen, OR<sub>f</sub>, SR<sub>f</sub>, NR<sub>f</sub>R<sub>g</sub>, -ONR<sub>f</sub>R<sub>g</sub>, -NR<sub>g</sub>(OR<sub>f</sub>), or -NR<sub>g</sub>(SR<sub>f</sub>) (each of R<sub>f</sub> and R<sub>g</sub>, independently, being H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, or C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl), or R¹

- 127 -

and  $R^2$  taken together are a bivalent moiety, the bivalent moiety forming a  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or  $C_{6-12}$  aryl, where the H in  $CHR^1$  is deleted when  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  taken together form a  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl or  $C_{6-12}$  aryl; and when  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are taken together,  $Z^2$  is  $CR^1$ , and one of  $A^1$  and  $L^0$  is  $(C_{1-4}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl or carboxyl, the other of  $A^1$  and  $L^0$  has a fragment formula weight of at least 20;

$A^1$  is the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or is of the following formula,



wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(CH=CH)-$ , vinylidene,  $-C=NOR_h$ ,  $-C=NNR_1R_1$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $CHX^4$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halo-methyl,  $OR_h$ ,  $SR_h$ ,  $NR_1R_1$ ,  $-NR_1(OR_h)$ , or  $-NR_1(NR_1R_1)$ , wherein  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl,  $C_{1-10}$  acyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl, and  $C_{6-10}$  arylsulfonyl; and each of  $R_1$  and  $R_1$ , independently is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $C_{1-10}$  acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen,  $(C_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl,  $(C_{7-14}$  arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or  $C_{6-14}$  aryl; or  $R^3$  and  $X^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid; and

$L^0$  is  $-(C=X^2)-L^1$ ,  $-(C=X^2)-L^2$ , or  $-C(L^2)-CH_2-O$ , wherein  $X^2$  is O or S;  $L^2$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, or  $C_{6-14}$  aryl, and  $L^1$  is a moiety having 0 to 25 carbon atoms, 0 to 10 heteroatoms, and 0 to 6 halogen atoms,  $L^1$  being linked by an oxygen or sulfur atom to the carbon atom bonded to  $X^2$ , where  $A^1$  is  $C_{5-20}$  alkyl when  $L^0$  is carboxyl or  $(C_{1-4}$  alkyl)-oxy-carbonyl and  $A^1$  is alkyl; where only one of  $A^1$  and  $L^0$  is

- 128 -

selected from carboxyl and (C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl)oxycarbonyl; where L<sup>1</sup> has at least 3 carbon atoms when Z<sup>1</sup> and Z<sup>2</sup> are both NH, and A<sup>1</sup> is methoxy; and when Z<sup>1</sup> is NH and Z<sup>2</sup> is (R) CHR<sup>1</sup>, L<sup>1</sup> has between 0 and 3 nonaromatic acyclic carbon atoms when there  
5 are 5 heteroatoms, L<sup>1</sup> has between 6 and 15 nonaromatic acyclic carbon atoms when there is only one oxygen atom, L<sup>1</sup> has 0, 1, 3, or 5 nonaromatic carbon atoms when there are three halogen atoms.

2. A compound of claim 1, wherein Z<sup>2</sup> is CHR<sup>1</sup> and  
10 Z<sup>1</sup>  
is NH or NR<sub>a</sub>.

3. A compound of claim 1, wherein L<sup>0</sup> is  
C<sub>2-16</sub> oxiranyl; L<sup>1</sup> is selected from hydroxy, C<sub>1-12</sub> alkoxy,  
C<sub>1-12</sub> alkylsulfonyloxy, C<sub>6-20</sub> arylsulfonyloxy, C<sub>7-20</sub> aryl-  
15 alkyl, C<sub>6-20</sub> aryloxy, C<sub>6-20</sub> arylalkylcarbonyloxy, C<sub>2-8</sub> alkyl-  
carbonyloxy, C<sub>6-20</sub> arylalkylcarbonylthio, C<sub>6-20</sub> arylthio, C<sub>2-8</sub>  
alkylcarbonylthio, and C<sub>1-12</sub> alkylthio; or L<sup>2</sup> is C<sub>1-2</sub> halo-  
alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, or H.

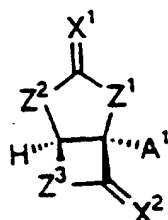
4. A compound of claim 1, wherein Z<sup>2</sup> is O, S, NH,  
20 or NR<sub>d</sub>.

5. A compound of claim 1, wherein Z<sup>2</sup> is O, S, NH,  
NR<sub>d</sub>, or CHR<sup>1</sup>; and R<sub>h</sub> is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>  
haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, and C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl.



- 129 -

6. A compound having the following formula



wherein Z<sup>1</sup> is O, S, SO<sub>2</sub>, NH, or NR<sub>a</sub>, R<sub>a</sub> being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl;

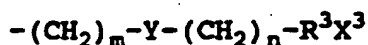
5 X<sup>1</sup> is O, S, CH<sub>2</sub>, two singly bonded H, CH(R<sub>b</sub>) in the E or Z configuration, or C(R<sub>b</sub>)(R<sub>c</sub>) in the E or Z configuration, each of R<sub>b</sub> and R<sub>c</sub>, independently, being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heterocyclic radical, or halogen, provided that when Z<sup>1</sup> is  
10 SO<sub>2</sub>, X<sup>1</sup> is two singly bonded H;

Z<sup>2</sup> is CHR<sup>1</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of a naturally occurring amino acid, OR<sub>d</sub>, SR<sub>d</sub>, or NR<sub>d</sub>R<sub>e</sub> (each of R<sub>d</sub> and R<sub>e</sub>,  
15 independently, being H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, or C<sub>2-5</sub> alkynyl);

Z<sup>3</sup> is O, S, NH, or NR<sub>j</sub>, R<sub>j</sub> being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl;

X<sup>2</sup> is O or S; and

A<sup>1</sup> is the side chain of any naturally occurring  
20 α-amino acid, or is of the following formula,



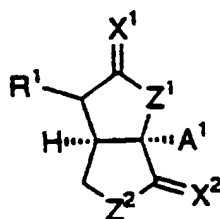
wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S, -(CH=CH)-, vinylidene, -C=NOR<sub>h</sub>,  
-C=NNR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>1</sub>., sulfonyl, methylene, CHX<sup>4</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted, X<sup>4</sup> being halogen, methyl, halo-  
25 methyl, OR<sub>h</sub>, SR<sub>h</sub>, NR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>1</sub>., -NR<sub>i</sub>-(OR<sub>h</sub>), or -NR<sub>i</sub>(NR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>1</sub>.),  
wherein R<sub>h</sub> is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>1-10</sub> acyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, and C<sub>6-10</sub> arylsulfonyl; each of R<sub>i</sub> and R<sub>1</sub>., independently,

- 130 -

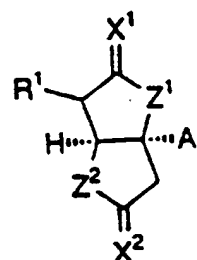
is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, and C<sub>1-10</sub> acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and R<sup>3</sup> is straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylidene, straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylidene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylene, phenylene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylidene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylene, or deleted, and X<sup>3</sup> is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen, (C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl)oxycarbonyl, (C<sub>7-14</sub> arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl; or R<sup>3</sup> and X<sup>3</sup> taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid; provided that R<sup>1</sup> is H, OH or OR<sub>d</sub> when X<sup>4</sup> is hydroxyl in the (S) configuration and -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-R<sup>3</sup>X<sup>3</sup> is isopropyl; and provided that the moiety -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-R<sup>3</sup>X<sup>3</sup> has between 5 and 20 carbon atoms when X<sup>4</sup> is hydroxyl in the (R) configuration, m is 0, and R<sup>1</sup> is C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl.

7. A compound of claim 6, wherein Z<sup>1</sup> is NH or NR<sub>a</sub>.

8. A compound having one of the following formulae



or



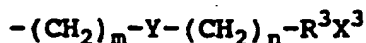
wherein Z<sup>1</sup> is NH or NR<sub>a</sub>, R<sub>a</sub> being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl;  
 20 X<sup>1</sup> is O, S, CH<sub>2</sub>, two singly bonded H, CH(R<sub>b</sub>) in the E or Z configuration, or C(R<sub>b</sub>)(R<sub>c</sub>) in the E or Z configuration, each of R<sub>b</sub> and R<sub>c</sub>, independently, being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heterocyclic radical, or halogen;  
 25 Z<sup>2</sup> is O, S, NH, or NR<sub>j</sub>, R<sub>j</sub> being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl;

- 131 -

$R^1$  is in the (R) or (S) configuration, and is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of a naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$  (each of  $R_d$  and  $R_e$ , independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or halogen);

$X^2$  is O or S; and

$A^1$  is the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or is of the following formula,

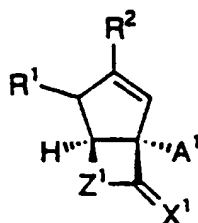


wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(CH=CH)-$ , vinylidene,  $-C=NOR_h$ ,  $-C=NNR_1R_1$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $CHX^4$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halo-methyl,  $OR_h$ ,  $SR_h$ ,  $NR_1R_1$ ,  $-NR_1(OR_h)$ , or  $-NR_1(NR_1R_1)$ , wherein  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of  $R_1$  and  $R_1$ , independently is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $C_{1-10}$  acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen,  $(C_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl,  $(C_{7-14}$  arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or  $C_{6-14}$  aryl; or  $R^3$  and  $X^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid; when  $X^1$  is 2 singly bonded H and  $R^1$  has only one oxygen, then the fragment formula weight of  $R^1$  is at least 30 atomic mass units; when  $X^1$  is 2 singly bonded H and  $R^1$  is 2 H, and  $A^1$  is alkyl, then  $A^1$  has at least 3 carbon atoms;  $A^1$ ,  $R^1$  and  $X^1$  taken together have at least one carbon atom, halogen, or heteroatom; when  $X^1$  is two singly bonded H, and  $R^1$  is H,  $X^2$  is O, and  $R_h$  is alkyl, then  $R_h$  is  $C_{4-6}$  alkyl; and when n is 2,  $R_h$  is  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl.

**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**

- 132 -

9. A compound having the following formula



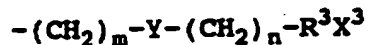
wherein  $Z^2$  is O, S, NH or  $NR_j$ ,  $R_j$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;  
 $X^1$  is O or S;

5  $R^1$  is in the (R) or (S) configuration, and is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of a naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$  (each of  $R_d$  and  $R_e$ , independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, or  $C_{2-5}$  alkynyl);

$R^2$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl, or halogen;

$X^2$  is O or S; and

15  $A^1$  is H, the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or is of the following formula,

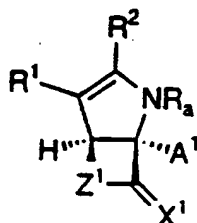


wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(CH=CH)-$ , vinylidene,  $-C=NOR_h$ ,  $-C=NNR_iR_{i'}$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $CHX^4$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halo-  
 20 methyl,  $OR_h$ ,  $SR_h$ ,  $NR_iR_{i'}$ ,  $-NR_i(OR_h)$ , or  $-NR_i(NR_iR_{i'})$ , wherein  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of  $R_i$  and  $R_{i'}$ , independently is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $C_{1-10}$  acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3,  
 25 and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $X^3$  is H,

- 133 -

hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen, (C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl)oxy-carbonyl, (C<sub>7-14</sub> arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl; or R<sup>3</sup> and X<sup>3</sup> taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid.

- 5                    10. A compound having the following formula



wherein Z<sup>1</sup> is O, S, NH or NR<sub>j</sub>, R<sub>j</sub> being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl;  
X<sup>1</sup> is O or S;

- R<sup>1</sup> is H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl,  
10 C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of a naturally occurring α-amino acid, OR<sub>d</sub>, SR<sub>d</sub>, or NR<sub>d</sub>R<sub>e</sub> (each of R<sub>d</sub> and R<sub>e</sub>, independently, being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heterocyclic radical, or halogen);

- 15 R<sup>2</sup> is H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, or halogen;

R<sub>a</sub> is C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl; and

A<sup>1</sup> is H, the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid, or is of the following formula,

- 20 
$$-(CH_2)_m-Y-(CH_2)_n-R^3X^3$$

wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S, -(CH=CH)-, vinylidene, -C=NOR<sub>h</sub>, -C=NNR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>i</sub>., sulfonyl, methylene, CHX<sup>4</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted, X<sup>4</sup> being halogen, methyl, halo-methyl, OR<sub>h</sub>, SR<sub>h</sub>, NR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>i</sub>., -NR<sub>i</sub>(OR<sub>h</sub>), or -NR<sub>i</sub>(NR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>i</sub>.), wherein

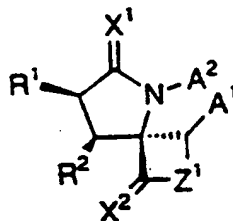
- 25 R<sub>h</sub> is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, and C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, and each of R<sub>i</sub> and R<sub>i</sub>., independently is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub>

- 134 -

alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, and C<sub>1-10</sub> acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and R<sup>3</sup> is straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylidene, straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylidene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylene, phenylene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylidene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylene, or deleted, and X<sup>3</sup> is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen, (C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl)oxycarbonyl, (C<sub>7-14</sub> arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl; or R<sup>3</sup> and X<sup>3</sup> taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid.

10

11. A compound having the formula



wherein X<sup>1</sup> is O, S, CH<sub>2</sub>, two singly bonded H, CH(R<sub>b</sub>) in the E or Z configuration, or C(R<sub>b</sub>)(R<sub>c</sub>) in the E or Z configuration, each of R<sub>b</sub> and R<sub>c</sub>, independently, being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heterocyclic radical, or halogen;

Z<sup>1</sup> is O, S, NH, or NR<sub>a</sub>, R<sub>a</sub> being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl;

R<sup>1</sup> H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid, OR<sub>d</sub>, SR<sub>d</sub>, or NR<sub>d</sub>R<sub>e</sub> (each of R<sub>d</sub> and R<sub>e</sub>, independently, being H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heterocyclic radical, or halogen); or R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> taken together are a bivalent moiety which forms a C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heterocyclic radical, or C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl;

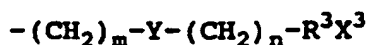
R<sup>2</sup> is C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, azido,

- 135 -

C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, halogen, OR<sub>f</sub>, SR<sub>f</sub>, NR<sub>f</sub>R<sub>g</sub>, -ONR<sub>f</sub>R<sub>g</sub>, -NR<sub>g</sub>(OR<sub>f</sub>), or -NR<sub>g</sub>(SR<sub>f</sub>) (each of R<sub>f</sub> and R<sub>g</sub>, independently, being H, C<sub>1-6</sub>, alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, or C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl), or R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> taken together are a bivalent moiety, the  
 5 bivalent moiety forming a C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heterocyclic radical, or C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl;

X<sup>2</sup> is O or S; and

A<sup>1</sup> is in the (R) or (S) configuration, and each of A<sup>1</sup> and A<sup>2</sup> is independently H, the side chain of any  
 10 naturally occurring amino α-acid, or is of the following formula,

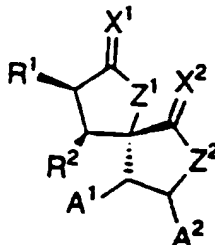


wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S, -(CH=CH)-, vinylidene, -C=NOR<sub>h</sub>, -C=NNR<sub>1</sub>R<sub>1</sub>., sulfonyl, methylene, CHX<sup>4</sup> in the (R) or (S) con-  
 15 figuration, or deleted, X<sup>4</sup> being halogen, methyl, halo-methyl, OR<sub>h</sub>, SR<sub>h</sub>, NR<sub>1</sub>R<sub>1</sub>., -NR<sub>1</sub>(OR<sub>h</sub>), or -NR<sub>1</sub>(NR<sub>1</sub>R<sub>1</sub>.), wherein R<sub>h</sub> is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, and C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, and each of R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>1</sub>., indepen-  
 20 alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, and C<sub>1-10</sub> acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and R<sup>3</sup> is straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylidene, straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylidene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylene, phenylene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylidene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylene, or deleted, and X<sup>3</sup> is H,  
 25 hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen, (C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl)oxy-carbonyl, (C<sub>7-14</sub> arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl; or R<sup>3</sup> and X<sup>3</sup> taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid.



- 136 -

12. A compound having the following formula



wherein  $Z^1$  is NH or  $NR_a$ ,  $NR_a$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;

$X^1$  is O, S,  $CH_2$ , two singly bonded H,  $CH(R_b)$  in the  
 5 E or Z configuration, or  $C(R_b)(R_c)$  in the E or Z configuration, each of  $R_b$  and  $R_c$ , independently, being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or halogen;

$Z^2$  is O, S, NH, or  $NR_j$ ,  $R_j$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;

10  $R^1$  is in the (R) or (S) configuration, and is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of any naturally occurring amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$  (each of  $R_d$  and  $R_e$ , independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{6-12}$   
 15 aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or halogen); or  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  taken together are a bivalent moiety which forms a  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or  $C_{6-12}$  aryl;

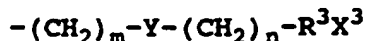
$R^2$  is  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, azido,  
 20  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, halogen,  $OR_f$ ,  $SR_f$ ,  $NR_fR_g$ ,  $-ONR_fR_g$ ,  $-NR_g(OR_f)$ , or  $-NR_g(SR_f)$  (each of  $R_f$  and  $R_g$ , independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, or  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl), or  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  taken together are a bivalent moiety, the bivalent moiety forming a  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  
 25  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or  $C_{6-12}$  aryl;

$X^2$  is O or S; and

each of  $A^1$  and  $A^2$  is independently in the (R) or (S) configuration, and is independently H, the side chain of

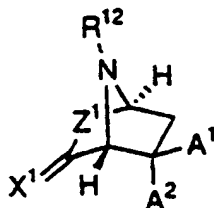
- 137 -

any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or is of the following formula,

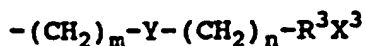


wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(\text{CH}=\text{CH})-$ , vinylidene,  $-\text{C}=\text{NOR}_h$ ,  
 5  $-\text{C}=\text{NNR}_1\text{R}_1$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $\text{CHX}^4$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted,  $\text{X}^4$  being halogen, methyl, halo-methyl,  $\text{OR}_h$ ,  $\text{SR}_h$ ,  $\text{NR}_1\text{R}_1$ ,  $-\text{NR}_1(\text{OR}_h)$ , or  $-\text{NR}_1(\text{NR}_1\text{R}_1)$ , wherein  $\text{R}_h$  is selected from H,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $\text{C}_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $\text{C}_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of  $\text{R}_1$  and  $\text{R}_1$ , indepen-  
 10 dently is selected from H,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $\text{C}_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $\text{C}_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $\text{C}_{1-10}$  acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $\text{R}^3$  is straight chain or branched  $\text{C}_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $\text{C}_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $\text{C}_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $\text{C}_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $\text{C}_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $\text{C}_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $\text{X}^3$  is H,  
 15 hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen,  $(\text{C}_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl,  $(\text{C}_{7-14}$  arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or  $\text{C}_{6-14}$  aryl; or  $\text{R}^3$  and  $\text{X}^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid.

20 13. A compound of the formula



wherein  $\text{Z}^1$  is O, NH, or  $\text{NR}_a$ ,  $\text{NR}_a$  being  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  alkyl;  
 $\text{X}^1$  is O, S,  $\text{CH}_2$ , or two singly bonded H;  
 each of  $\text{A}^1$  and  $\text{A}^2$  is independently H, the side chain  
 25 of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or is of the following formula,



- 138 -

wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(CH=CH)-$ , vinylidene,  $-C=NOR_h$ ,  $-C=NNR_1R_1$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $CHX^4$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halo-methyl,  $OR_h$ ,  $SR_h$ ,  $NR_1R_1$ ,  $-NR_1(OR_h)$ , or  $-NR_1(NR_1R_1)$ , wherein

5  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of  $R_1$  and  $R_1$ , independently is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $C_{1-10}$  acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched

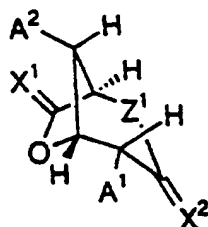
10  $C_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen,  $(C_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl,  $(C_{7-14}$  arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or  $C_{6-14}$  aryl; or  $R^3$

15 and  $X^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid; and

$R^{12}$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, or  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl; where  $A^1$ ,  $A^2$ ,  $R^{12}$ , and  $X^1$  taken together have at least one carbon atom and one heteroatom.

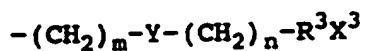
20

14. A compound having the formula



wherein  $Z^1$  is NH, or  $NR_a$ ,  $NR_a$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;  
 each of  $X^1$  and  $X^2$ , independently, is O or S;  
 each of  $A^1$  and  $A^2$  is independently in the (R) or (S)

25 configuration, and is independently H, the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or is of the following formula,



- 139 -

wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(CH=CH)-$ , vinylidene,  $-C=NOR_h$ ,  $-C=NNR_1R_1$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $CHX^4$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halo-methyl,  $OR_h$ ,  $SR_h$ ,  $NR_1R_1$ ,  $-NR_1(OR_h)$ , or  $-NR_1(NR_1R_1)$ , wherein

5  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of  $R_1$  and  $R_1$ , independently is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $C_{1-10}$  acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched

10  $C_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen,  $(C_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl,  $(C_{7-14}$  arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or  $C_{6-14}$  aryl; or  $R^3$

15 and  $X^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid.

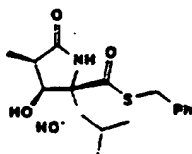
15. A compound of claim 1, wherein  $Z^1$  is NH or  $NR_a$ ;  $X^1$  is O or S;  $Z^2$  is  $CHR^1$  or  $CHOR^1$ ,  $R^1$  being H, halogen,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, or  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl;  $R^2$  is  $OR_f$ ; and  $L^0$  is  $-(C=X^2)-L^1$ ,  $X^2$

20 being O and  $L^1$  being linked by a sulfur atom to the carbon atom bonded to  $X^2$ .

16. A compound of claim 15 wherein  $L^1$  is selected from substituted or unsubstituted  $C_{6-20}$  arylalkylcarbonylthio,  $C_{6-20}$  arylthio,  $C_{2-8}$  alkylcarbonylthio, and  $C_{1-12}$

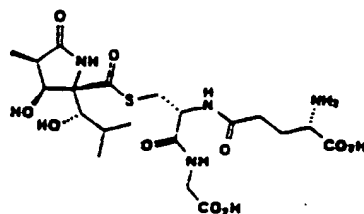
25 alkylthio.

17. A compound of claim 15 having a formula selected from:



I-1

and



I-2

- 140 -

18. A compound of claim 6 wherein  $Z^1$  is O, S,  $SO_2$ , NH, or  $NR_a$ ,  $R_a$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;

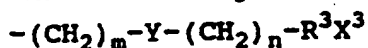
$X^1$  is O, S,  $CH_2$ , two singly bonded H,  $CH(R_b)$  in the E or Z configuration, or  $C(R_b)(R_c)$  in the E or Z configuration, each of  $R_b$  and  $R_c$ , independently, being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or halogen, provided that when  $Z^1$  is  $SO_2$ ,  $X^1$  is two singly bonded H;

$Z^2$  is  $CHR^1$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, wherein  
 10  $R^1$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of a naturally occurring amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$  (each of  $R_d$  and  $R_e$ , independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, or  $C_{2-5}$  alkynyl);

15  $Z^3$  is O, S, NH, or  $NR_j$ ,  $R_j$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;

$X^2$  is O or S; and

$A^1$  is the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or is of the following formula,

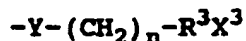


20 wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(CH=CH)-$ , vinylidene,  $-C=NOR_h$ ,  $-C=NNR_iR_{i'}$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $CHX^4$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halo-methyl,  $OR_h$ ,  $SR_h$ ,  $NR_iR_{i'}$ ,  $-NR_i(OR_h)$ , or  $-NR_i(NR_iR_{i'})$ , wherein  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of  $R_i$  and  $R_{i'}$ , indepen-  
 25 dently is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $C_{1-10}$  acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  
 30  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen,  $(C_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxy-

- 141 -

carbonyl, (C<sub>7-14</sub> arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl; or R<sup>3</sup> and X<sup>3</sup> taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid; where CHX<sup>4</sup> is in the (S) configuration when X<sup>4</sup> is hydroxyl and -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-R<sup>3</sup>X<sup>3</sup> is isopropyl, and the moiety -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-R<sup>3</sup>X<sup>3</sup> has between 5 and 20 carbon atoms when X<sup>4</sup> is hydroxyl, m is 0, and Z<sup>1</sup> is NH.

19. A compound of claim 6 wherein Z<sup>1</sup> is NH or NR<sub>a</sub>; X<sup>1</sup> is O or S; Z<sup>2</sup> is CHR<sup>1</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of a naturally occurring amino acid, OR<sub>d</sub>, SR<sub>d</sub>, or NR<sub>d</sub>R<sub>e</sub> (each of R<sub>d</sub> and R<sub>e</sub>, independently, being H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, or C<sub>2-5</sub> alkynyl); Z<sup>3</sup> is O or NH; X<sup>2</sup> is O or S; and A<sup>1</sup> is the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid, or is of the following formula,



wherein Y is C=O or CHX<sup>4</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted, X<sup>4</sup> being halogen, methyl, halomethyl, or OR<sub>h</sub>, wherein R<sub>h</sub> is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>1-10</sub> acyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, and C<sub>6-10</sub> arylsulfonyl; n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and R<sup>3</sup> is straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylene, phenylene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylene, or deleted; and X<sup>3</sup> is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen, or C<sub>6-10</sub> aryl; or R<sup>3</sup> and X<sup>3</sup> taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid.

20. A compound of claim 19, wherein Z<sup>1</sup> is NH and Z<sup>3</sup> is O.

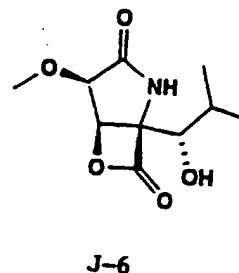
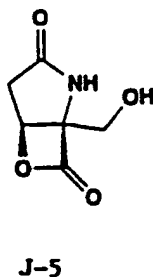
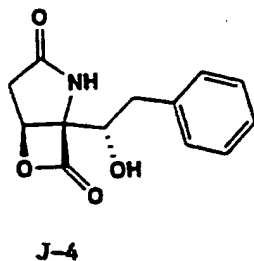
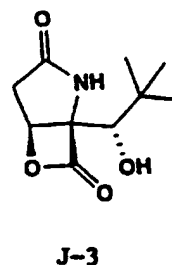
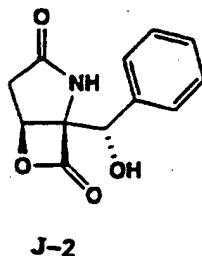
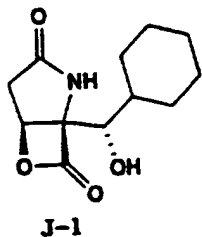
21. A compound of claim 19, wherein each of Z<sup>1</sup> and Z<sup>3</sup> is NH.

- 142 -

22. A compound of claim 6 having a formula wherein at least four of the following limitations apply:  $Z^1$  is NH or  $NR_a$ ;  $X^1$  is O or S;  $Z^2$  is  $CHR^1$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, wherein  $R^1$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl, hydroxyl, or  $OR_d$ ,  $R_d$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;  $Z^3$  is O or NH;  $X^2$  is O;  $Z^3$  is O or NH; and  $A^1$  is the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or  $CHX^4$ ,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halomethyl, or  $OR_h$ ,  $R_h$  being selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{1-10}$  acyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl, and  $C_{6-10}$  arylsulfonyl;  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkyl-  
 10 ene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted; m is 0, 1, or 2 and n is 0 or 1; and  $X^3$  is H.

23. A compound of claim 22 selected from the following formulae:

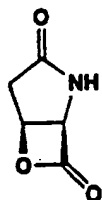
15



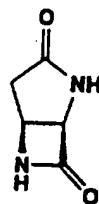
**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**



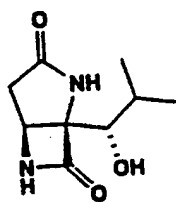
- 143 -



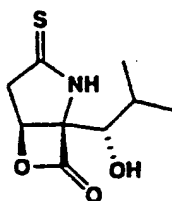
J-7



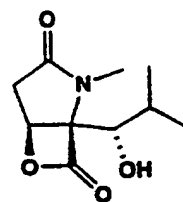
J-8



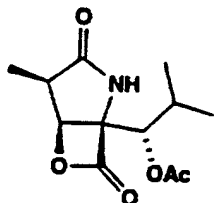
J-9



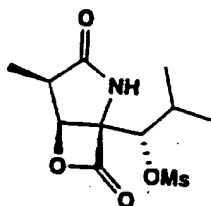
J-10



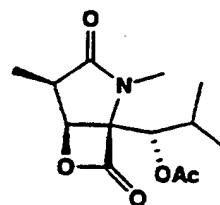
J-11



J-12

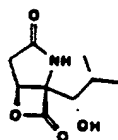


J-13

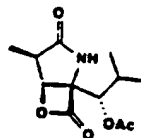


J-15

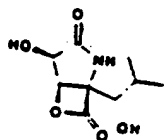
- 144 -



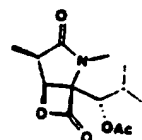
P-2



P-3



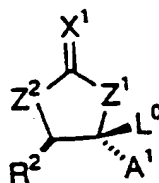
P-4



P-5

- 145 -

24. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound having the formula



5            wherein Z<sup>1</sup> is O, S, SO<sub>2</sub>, NH, or NR<sub>a</sub>, R<sub>a</sub> being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl;

          X<sup>1</sup> is O, S, CH<sub>2</sub>, two singly bonded H, CH(R<sub>b</sub>) in the E or Z configuration, or C(R<sub>b</sub>)(R<sub>c</sub>) in the E or Z configuration, each of R<sub>b</sub> and R<sub>c</sub>, independently, being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heterocyclic radical, or halogen, X<sup>1</sup> being two singly bonded H when Z<sup>1</sup> is SO<sub>2</sub>;

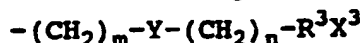
          Z<sup>2</sup> is O, S, NH, NR<sub>d</sub>, CHR<sup>1</sup>, or CHOR<sup>1</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, wherein R<sub>d</sub> is C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl and R<sup>1</sup> is H, halogen, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, NR<sub>d</sub>R<sub>e</sub> (except where Z<sup>2</sup> is CHOR<sup>1</sup>), or the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid, or R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> taken together are a bivalent moiety, provided that when R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are taken together, Z<sup>1</sup> is NH or NR<sub>a</sub> and Z<sup>2</sup> is CHR<sup>1</sup>; R<sub>e</sub> being H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, or C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, and the bivalent moiety forming a C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heterocyclic radical, or C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl, where the H in CHR<sup>1</sup> is deleted when R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>2</sub> taken together form a C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl or C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl;

25            R<sup>2</sup> is C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, azido, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, halogen, OR<sub>f</sub>, SR<sub>f</sub>, NR<sub>f</sub>R<sub>g</sub>, -ONR<sub>f</sub>R<sub>g</sub>, -NR<sub>g</sub>(OR<sub>f</sub>), or -NR<sub>g</sub>(SR<sub>f</sub>) (each of R<sub>f</sub> and R<sub>g</sub>, independently, being H,

- 146 -

C<sub>1-6</sub>, alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, or C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl), or R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> taken together are a bivalent moiety, the bivalent moiety forming a C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heterocyclic radical, or C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl, where the H in CHR<sup>1</sup> is deleted when R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>2</sub> taken together form a C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl or C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl;

A<sup>1</sup> is H, the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid, or is of the following formula,



10 wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S, -(CH=CH)-, vinylidene, -C=NOR<sub>h</sub>, -C=NNR<sub>1</sub>R<sub>1</sub>., sulfonyl, methylene, CHX<sup>4</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted, X<sup>4</sup> being halogen, methyl, halo-methyl, OR<sub>h</sub>, SR<sub>h</sub>, NR<sub>1</sub>R<sub>1</sub>., -NR<sub>1</sub>(OR<sub>h</sub>), or -NR<sub>1</sub>(NR<sub>1</sub>R<sub>1</sub>.), wherein R<sub>h</sub> is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>1-10</sub> acyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, and C<sub>6-10</sub> arylsulfonyl, and each of R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>1</sub>., independently is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, and C<sub>1-10</sub> acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and R<sup>3</sup> is straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylidene, straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylidene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylene, phenylene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylidene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylene, or deleted, and X<sup>3</sup> is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen, (C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl)oxycarbonyl, (C<sub>7-14</sub> arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl; or R<sup>3</sup> and X<sup>3</sup> taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid; and

L<sup>0</sup> is H or an organic moiety having 1 to 25 carbon atoms, 0 to 10 heteroatoms, and 0 to 6 halogen atoms; and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

30 25. A pharmaceutical composition of claim 24, wherein Z<sup>2</sup> is CHR<sup>1</sup> and Z<sup>1</sup> is NH or NR<sub>a</sub>.

26. A pharmaceutical composition of claim 24,

- 147 -

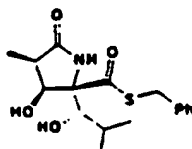
wherein  $L^0$  is H or  $-(C=X^2)-L^1$ ,  $X^2$  being O and  $L^1$  being linked by an oxygen or sulfur atom to the carbon atom bonded to  $X^2$ ; where only one of  $A^1$  and  $L^0$  is selected from carboxyl and  $(C_{1-4}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl; wherein  $L^1$  is hydroxy,  $C_{1-12}$  alkoxy,  $C_{1-12}$  alkylsulfonyloxy,  $C_{6-20}$  arylsulfonyloxy,  $C_{7-20}$  arylalkyl,  $C_{6-20}$  aryloxy,  $C_{6-20}$  arylalkylcarbonyloxy,  $C_{2-8}$  alkylcarbonyloxy,  $C_{6-20}$  arylalkylcarbonylthio,  $C_{6-20}$  arylthio,  $C_{2-8}$  alkylcarbonylthio, or  $C_{1-12}$  alkylthio.

27. A pharmaceutical composition of claim 24,  
10 wherein  $L^1$  is linked by a sulfur atom to the carbon atom bonded to  $X^2$ .

28. A pharmaceutical composition of claim 27,  
wherein  $L^1$  is substituted or unsubstituted  $C_{6-20}$  arylalkylcarbonylthio,  $C_{6-20}$  arylthio,  $C_{2-8}$  alkylcarbonylthio, or  
15  $C_{1-12}$  alkylthio.

29. A pharmaceutical composition of claim 24,  
wherein  $Z^1$  is NH or  $NR_a$ ;  $X^1$  is O or S;  $Z^2$  is  $CHR^1$  or  $CHOR^1$ ,  $R^1$  being H, halogen,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, or  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl;  $R^2$  is  $OR_f$ ; and  $L^0$  is  $-(C=X^2)-L^1$ ,  $X^2$  being O and  $L^1$  being linked by  
20 a sulfur atom to the carbon atom bonded to  $X^2$ .

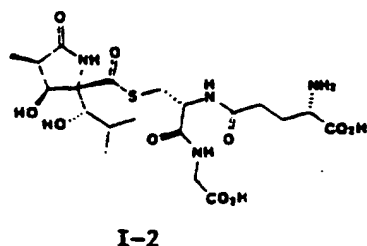
30. A pharmaceutical composition of claim 29, comprising a compound having a formula selected from:



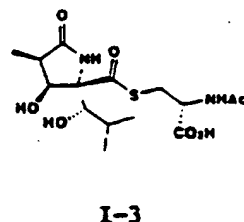
I-1

**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**

- 148 -

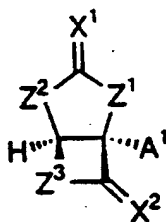


and



31. A pharmaceutical composition of claim 24, wherein  $Z^2$  is O, S, NH or  $NR_d$ .

5        32. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound having the following formula



wherein  $Z^1$  is O, S,  $SO_2$ , NH, or  $NR_a$ ,  $R_a$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;

10         $X^1$  is O, S,  $CH_2$ , two singly bonded H,  $CH(R_b)$  in the E or Z configuration, or  $C(R_b)(R_c)$  in the E or Z configuration, each of  $R_b$  and  $R_c$ , independently, being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or halogen, provided that when  $Z^1$  is

15         $SO_2$ ,  $X^1$  is two singly bonded H;

$Z^2$  is  $CHR^1$  in the (R) or (S) configuration,  $R^1$  being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of a naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$  (each of  $R_d$  and  $R_e$ ,

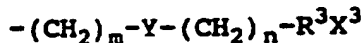
20        independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, or  $C_{2-5}$  alkynyl);

$Z^3$  is O, S, NH, or  $NR_j$ , wherein  $R_j$  is  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;

$X^2$  is O or S; and

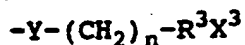
- 149 -

A<sup>1</sup> is H, the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid, or is of the following formula,



wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S, -(CH=CH)-, vinylidene, -C=NOR<sub>h</sub>,  
 5 -C=NNR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>i</sub>., sulfonyl, methylene, CHX<sup>4</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted, X<sup>4</sup> being halogen, methyl, halo-methyl, OR<sub>h</sub>, SR<sub>h</sub>, NR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>i</sub>., -NR<sub>i</sub>(OR<sub>h</sub>), or -NR<sub>i</sub>(NR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>i</sub>.), wherein R<sub>h</sub> is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>1-10</sub> acyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, and  
 10 C<sub>6-10</sub> arylsulfonyl; and each of R<sub>i</sub> and R<sub>i</sub>., independently is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, and C<sub>1-10</sub> acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and R<sup>3</sup> is straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylidene, straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylene, C<sub>3-10</sub>  
 15 cycloalkylidene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylene, phenylene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylidene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylene, or deleted, and X<sup>3</sup> is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen, (C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl)oxycarbonyl, (C<sub>7-14</sub> arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl; or R<sup>3</sup> and X<sup>3</sup> taken together are the side chain of any  
 20 naturally occurring α-amino acid; and  
 a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

33. A pharmaceutical composition of claim 32  
 wherein Z<sup>1</sup> is NH or NR<sub>a</sub>; X<sup>1</sup> is O or S; Z<sup>2</sup> is CHR<sup>1</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> halo-  
 25 alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of a naturally occurring α-amino acid, OR<sub>d</sub>, SR<sub>d</sub>, or NR<sub>d</sub>R<sub>e</sub> (each of R<sub>d</sub> and R<sub>e</sub>, independently, being H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, or C<sub>2-5</sub> alkynyl); Z<sup>3</sup> is O or NH; X<sup>2</sup> is O or S; and A<sup>1</sup> is the side chain of any naturally  
 30 occurring α-amino acid, or is of the following formula,



wherein Y is C=O or CHX<sup>4</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted, X<sup>4</sup> being halogen, methyl, halomethyl, or OR<sub>h</sub>,



- 150 -

wherein  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl,  $C_{1-10}$  acyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl, and  $C_{6-10}$  arylsulfonyl; n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, 5 ene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted; and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen, or  $C_{6-10}$  aryl; or  $R^3$  and  $X^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid.

34. A pharmaceutical composition of claim 33,  
10 wherein  $X^2$  is O, and  $A^1$  is the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or  $X^4$  is halogen, methyl, halo-methyl, or  $OR_h$ ,  $R_h$  being selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{1-10}$  acyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl, and  $C_{6-10}$  aryl-sulfonyl;  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  
15  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted; m is 0, 1, or 2 and n is 0 or 1; and  $X^3$  is H.

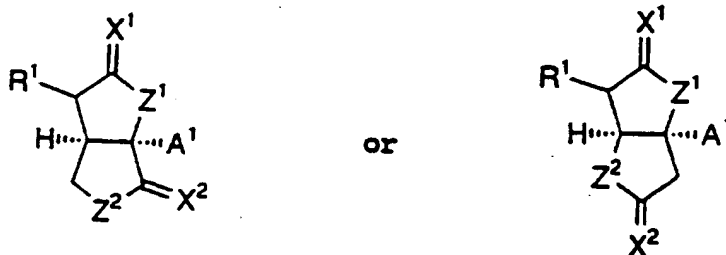
35. A pharmaceutical composition of claim 32,  
comprising a compound having a formula selected from:  
clasto-lactacystin (9R)- $\beta$ -lactone, clasto-lactacystin  
20 trifluoroethyl ester, descarboxylactacystin, lactacystin amide, and phenylacetyl lactacystin.

- 151 -

36. A pharmaceutical composition of claim 32, wherein  $Z^1$  is NH or  $NR_a$ ;  $X^1$  is O or S;  $Z^2$  is  $CHR^1$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, wherein  $R^1$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl, hydroxyl, or  $OR_d$ ,  $R_d$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;  $Z^3$  is O or NH;  $X^2$  is O;  $Z^3$  is O or NH; and  $A^1$  is the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or  $CHX^4$ ,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halomethyl, or  $OR_h$ ,  $R_h$  being selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{1-10}$  acyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl, and  $C_{6-10}$  arylsulfonyl;  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted; m is 0, 1, or 2 and n is 0 or 1; and  $X^3$  is H.

37. A pharmaceutical composition of claim 32, comprising a compound having a formula selected from claim 23.

38. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound having a formula selected from:



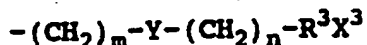
wherein  $Z^1$  is NH or  $NR_a$ ,  $R_a$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;  
 $X^1$  is O, S,  $CH_2$ , two singly bonded H,  $CH(R_b)$  in the E or Z configuration, or  $C(R_b)(R_c)$  in the E or Z configuration, each of  $R_b$  and  $R_c$ , independently, being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or halogen;  
 $Z^2$  is O, S, NH, or  $NR_j$ , wherein  $R_j$  is  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;

- 152 -

$R^1$  is in the (R) or (S) configuration, and is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of a naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$  (each of  $R_d$  and  $R_e$ ,  
 5 independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or halogen);

$X^2$  is O or S; and

$A^1$  is H, the side chain of any naturally occurring  
 10  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or is of the following formula,



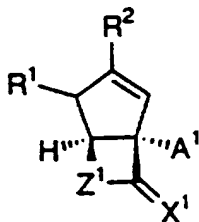
wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(CH=CH)-$ , vinylidene,  $-C=NOR_h$ ,  $-C=NNR_1R_1$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $CHX^4$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halo-  
 15 methyl,  $OR_h$ ,  $SR_h$ ,  $NR_1R_1$ ,  $-NR_1(OR_h)$ , or  $-NR_1(NR_1R_1)$ , wherein  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of  $R_1$  and  $R_1$ , independently is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $C_{1-10}$  acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3,  
 20 and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen,  $(C_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxy-  
 25 carbonyl,  $(C_{7-14}$  arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or  $C_{6-14}$  aryl; or  $R^3$  and  $X^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid; and

a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**

- 153 -

39. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound having the following formula



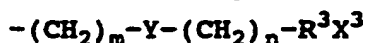
wherein  $Z^1$  is O, S, NH or  $NR_j$ ,  $R_j$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;  
 $X^1$  is O or S;

$R^1$  is in the (R) or (S) configuration, and is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of a naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$  (each of  $R_d$  and  $R_e$ ,  
 10 independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, or  $C_{2-5}$  alkynyl);

$R^2$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl, or halogen;

$X^2$  is O or S; and

15  $A^1$  is H, the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or is of the following formula,



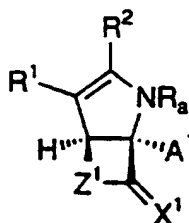
wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(CH=CH)-$ , vinylidene,  $-C=NOR_h$ ,  $-C=NNR_iR_{i'}$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $CHX^4$  in the (R) or (S) con-  
 20 figuration, or deleted,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halo-methyl,  $OR_h$ ,  $SR_h$ ,  $NR_iR_{i'}$ ,  $-NR_i(OR_h)$ , or  $-NR_i(NR_iR_{i'})$ , wherein  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of  $R_i$  and  $R_{i'}$ , independently is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $C_{1-10}$  acyl; m is  
 25 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $C_{3-10}$  cyclo-

- 154 -

alkylene, phenylene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylidene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkyl-ene, or deleted, and X<sup>3</sup> is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen, (C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl)oxycarbonyl, (C<sub>7-14</sub> aryl-alkyl)oxycarbonyl, or C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl; or R<sup>3</sup> and X<sup>3</sup> taken  
 5 together are the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid; and  
 a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

40. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound having the following formula

10



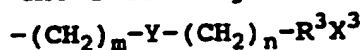
wherein Z<sup>1</sup> is O, S, NH or NR<sub>j</sub>, R<sub>j</sub> being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl;  
 X<sup>1</sup> is O or S;

R<sup>1</sup> is H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of a naturally  
 15 occurring α-amino acid, OR<sub>d</sub>, SR<sub>d</sub>, or NR<sub>d</sub>R<sub>e</sub> (each of R<sub>d</sub> and R<sub>e</sub>, independently, being C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heterocyclic radical, or halogen);

R<sup>2</sup> is H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>6-12</sub> aryl, C<sub>3-8</sub> heteroaryl, or halogen;  
 20

R<sub>a</sub> is C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl; and

A<sup>1</sup> is H, the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid, or is of the following formula,

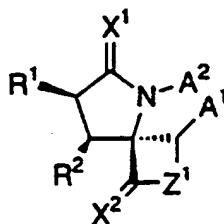


25 wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S, -(CH=CH)-, vinylidene, -C=NOR<sub>h</sub>, -C=NNR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>l</sub>, sulfonyl, methylene, CHX<sup>4</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted, X<sup>4</sup> being halogen, methyl, halo-

- 155 -

methyl,  $OR_h$ ,  $SR_h$ ,  $NR_iR_{i'}$ ,  $-NR_i(OR_h)$ , or  $-NR_i(NR_iR_{i'})$ , wherein  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of  $R_i$  and  $R_{i'}$ , independently is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $C_{1-10}$  acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen,  $(C_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxy-carbonyl,  $(C_{7-14}$  arylalkyl)oxy-carbonyl, or  $C_{6-14}$  aryl; or  $R^3$  and  $X^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid; and  
 a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

- 15            41. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound having the formula



wherein  $X^1$  is O, S,  $CH_2$ , two singly bonded H,  $CH(R_b)$  in the E or Z configuration, or  $C(R_b)(R_c)$  in the E or Z configuration, each of  $R_b$  and  $R_c$ , independently, being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or halogen;

$Z^1$  is O, S, NH, or  $NR_a$ ,  $R_a$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;

$R^1$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$  (each of  $R_d$  and  $R_e$ , independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$

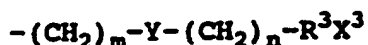
- 156 -

heterocyclic radical, or halogen); or  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  taken together are a bivalent moiety which forms a  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or  $C_{6-12}$  aryl;

- 5  $R^2$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, azido,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, halogen,  $OR_f$ ,  $SR_f$ ,  $NR_fR_g$ ,  $-ONR_fR_g$ ,  $-NR_g(OR_f)$ , or  $-NR_g(SR_f)$  (each of  $R_f$  and  $R_g$ , independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, or  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl), or  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  taken together are a bivalent moiety, the bivalent moiety forming a  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or  $C_{6-12}$  aryl;

$X^2$  is O or S; and

- $A^1$  is in the (R) or (S) configuration, and each of  $A^1$  and  $A^2$  is independently H, the side chain of any naturally occurring amino  $\alpha$ -acid, or is of the following formula,



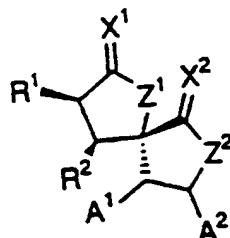
- wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(CH=CH)-$ , vinylidene,  $-C=NOR_h$ ,  $-C=NNR_iR_{i'}$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $CHX^4$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halo-methyl,  $OR_h$ ,  $SR_h$ ,  $NR_iR_{i'}$ ,  $-NR_i(OR_h)$ , or  $-NR_i(NR_iR_{i'})$ , wherein  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of  $R_i$  and  $R_{i'}$ , independently is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $C_{1-10}$  acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen,  $(C_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl,  $(C_{7-14}$  arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or  $C_{6-14}$  aryl; or  $R^3$  and  $X^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid; and

a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.



- 157 -

42. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound having the following formula



- wherein  $Z^1$  is NH or  $NR_a$ ,  $NR_a$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;
- 5  $X^1$  is O, S,  $CH_2$ , two singly bonded H,  $CH(R_b)$  in the E or Z configuration, or  $C(R_b)(R_c)$  in the E or Z configuration, each of  $R_b$  and  $R_c$ , independently, being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or halogen;
- 10  $Z^2$  is O, S, NH, or  $NR_j$ ,  $R_j$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;
- $R^1$  is in the (R) or (S) configuration, and is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, hydroxyl, halogen, a side chain of any naturally occurring amino acid,  $OR_d$ ,  $SR_d$ , or  $NR_dR_e$  (each of  $R_d$  and  $R_e$ , independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{6-12}$  aryl,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or halogen); or  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  taken together are a bivalent moiety which forms a  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or  $C_{6-12}$  aryl;
- 20  $R^2$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, azido,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, halogen,  $OR_f$ ,  $SR_f$ ,  $NR_fR_g$ ,  $-ONR_fR_g$ ,  $-NR_g-(OR_f)$ , or  $-NR_g(SR_f)$  (each of  $R_f$  and  $R_g$ , independently, being H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, or  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl), or  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  taken together are a bivalent moiety,
- 25 the bivalent moiety forming a  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{3-8}$  heteroaryl,  $C_{3-8}$  heterocyclic radical, or  $C_{6-12}$  aryl;
- $X^2$  is O or S; and

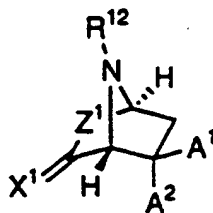
- 158 -

each of  $A^1$  and  $A^2$  is independently in the (R) or (S) configuration, and is independently H, the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or is of the following formula,

- 5  $-(CH_2)_m-Y-(CH_2)_n-R^3X^3$   
 wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(CH=CH)-$ , vinylidene,  $-C=NOR_h$ ,  $-C=NNR_1R_1$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $CHX^4$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halo-  
 methyl,  $OR_h$ ,  $SR_h$ ,  $NR_1R_1$ ,  $-NR_1(OR_h)$ , or  $-NR_1(NR_1R_1)$ , wherein  
 10  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of  $R_1$  and  $R_1$ , independently is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $C_{1-10}$  acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  
 15  $C_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen,  $(C_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl,  $(C_{7-14}$  arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or  $C_{6-14}$  aryl; or  $R^3$   
 20 and  $X^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid; and

a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

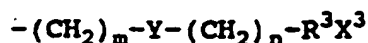
43. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound of the formula



wherein  $Z^1$  is O, NH, or  $NR_a$ ,  $NR_a$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl;  
 $X^1$  is O, S,  $CH_2$ , or two singly bonded H;

- 159 -

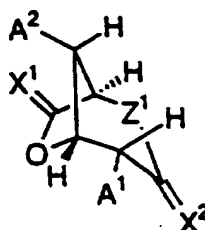
each of  $A^1$  and  $A^2$  is independently H, the side chain of any naturally occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid, or is of the following formula,



- 5 wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S,  $-(CH=CH)-$ , vinylidene,  $-C=NOR_h$ ,  $-C=NNR_1R_1$ , sulfonyl, methylene,  $CHX^4$  in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted,  $X^4$  being halogen, methyl, halo-methyl,  $OR_h$ ,  $SR_h$ ,  $NR_1R_1$ ,  $-NR_1(OR_h)$ , or  $-NR_1(NR_1R_1)$ , wherein  $R_h$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, and  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and each of  $R_1$  and  $R_1$ , indepen-
- 10 dently is selected from H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, and  $C_{1-10}$  acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and  $R^3$  is straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylidene, straight chain or branched  $C_{1-8}$  alkylene,
- 15  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylidene,  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkylene, phenylene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylidene,  $C_{6-14}$  arylalkylene, or deleted, and  $X^3$  is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen,  $(C_{1-6}$  alkyl)oxycarbonyl,  $(C_{7-14}$  arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or  $C_{6-14}$  aryl; or  $R^3$  and  $X^3$  taken together are the side chain of any naturally
- 20 occurring  $\alpha$ -amino acid; and

$R^{12}$  is H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  haloalkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, or  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl; and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

44. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound having the formula



25

wherein  $Z^1$  is NH, or  $NR_a$ ,  $NR_a$  being  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl; each of  $X^1$  and  $X^2$ , independently, is O or S;

- 160 -

each of A<sup>1</sup> and A<sup>2</sup> is independently in the (R) or (S) configuration, and is independently H, the side chain of any naturally occurring amino acid, or is of the following formula,

- 5  $-(CH_2)_m-Y-(CH_2)_n-R^3X^3$
- wherein Y is O, S, C=O, C=S, -(CH=CH)-, vinylidene, -C=NOR<sub>h</sub>, -C=NNR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>i</sub>., sulfonyl, methylene, CHX<sup>4</sup> in the (R) or (S) configuration, or deleted, X<sup>4</sup> being halogen, methyl, halo-methyl, OR<sub>h</sub>, SR<sub>h</sub>, NR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>i</sub>., -NR<sub>i</sub>(OR<sub>h</sub>), or -NR<sub>i</sub>(NR<sub>i</sub>R<sub>i</sub>.), wherein
- 10 R<sub>h</sub> is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, and C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, and each of R<sub>i</sub> and R<sub>i</sub>., independently is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, and C<sub>1-10</sub> acyl; m is 0, 1, 2, or 3, and n is 0, 1, 2, or 3; and R<sup>3</sup> is straight chain or branched
- 15 C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylidene, straight chain or branched C<sub>1-8</sub> alkylene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylidene, C<sub>3-10</sub> cycloalkylene, phenylene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylidene, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylalkylene, or deleted, and X<sup>3</sup> is H, hydroxyl, thiol, carboxyl, amino, halogen, (C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl)oxycarbonyl, (C<sub>7-14</sub> arylalkyl)oxycarbonyl, or C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl; or R<sup>3</sup>
- 20 and X<sup>3</sup> taken together are the side chain of any naturally occurring α-amino acid; and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

45. A method of treating inflammation, comprising administering to a subject an effective anti-inflammatory
- 25 amount of a pharmaceutical composition of claim 24 or claim 32.

46. A method of claim 45, wherein the inflammation is associated with injury or infection.

47. A method of claim 45, wherein the inflammation
- 30 is associated with an allergy or asthma.

- 161 -

48. A method of claim 45, wherein the inflammation is associated with a disease state selected from rheumatoid arthritis, scleroderma, rheumatic fever, inflammatory bowel disease, diabetes mellitus, myasthenia gravis, multiple sclerosis, Guillan-Barre syndrome, conjunctiva of the eye, systemic lupus erythematosus, encephalitis, Adult Respiratory Distress Syndrome, emphysema, Alzheimer's disease, and muscular dystrophy.

49. A method of claim 45, wherein the inflammation is associated with transplantation of bone marrow or a solid organ selected from kidney, lung, heart, pancreas, liver, and skin, and the composition is administered before, during, or after transplantation.

50. A method of claim 45, wherein the pharmaceutical composition is administered orally.

51. A method of claim 45, wherein said composition is a composition of claim 34.

52. A method of claim 45, wherein said composition is a composition of claim 30.

53. A method of treating cancer, comprising administering to a subject an effective anti-cancer amount of a pharmaceutical composition of claim 24 or 32.

54. A method of claim 53, wherein the cancer is selected from carcinoma, lymphoma, sarcoma, and myeloma.

55. A method of claim 53, wherein said cancer is selected from adenocarcinoma, acinic cell adenocarcinoma, adrenal cortical carcinomas, alveoli cell carcinoma, anaplastic carcinoma, basaloid carcinoma, basal cell carcinoma,

- 162 -

cinoma, bronchiolar carcinoma, bronchogenic carcinoma, renaladino carcinoma, embryonal carcinoma, anometroid carcinoma, fibrolamolar liver cell carcinoma, follicular carcinomas, giant cell carcinomas, hepatocellular carcinoma, intraepidermal carcinoma, intraepithelial carcinoma, leptomanigio carcinoma, medullary carcinoma, melanotic carcinoma, menigual carcinoma, mesometonephric carcinoma, oat cell carcinoma, squamal cell carcinoma, sweat gland carcinoma, transitional cell carcinoma, tubular cell carcinoma, amelioblastic sarcoma, angiolithic sarcoma, botryoid sarcoma, endometrial stroma sarcoma, ewing sarcoma, fascicular sarcoma, giant cell sarcoma, granulositic sarcoma, immunoblastic sarcoma, juxaccordial osteogenic sarcoma, Kaposi's sarcoma, leukocytic sarcoma, lymphatic sarcoma, medullary sarcoma, myeloid sarcoma, austiogeneci sarcoma, periosteal sarcoma, reticulum cell sarcoma, round cell sarcoma, spindle cell sarcoma, synovial sarcoma, and telangiectatic audiogenic sarcoma, neural blastoma, glioblastoma, astrocytoma, melanoma, leiomyo sarcoma, multiple myeloma, Hemangioma, Hodgkin's disease, Burkitt's lymphoma, and nodular poorly-differentiated lymphocytic lymphoma, nodular mixed lymphocytic lymphoma, nodular histiocytic lymphoma, and diffuse lymphomas.

56. A method of claim 53, wherein said composition is a composition of claim 34.

57. A method of claim 53, wherein said composition is a composition of claim 37.

58. A method for treating psoriasis, comprising administering to a subject an effective amount of a pharmaceutical composition of claim 24 or 32.

- 163 -

59. A method for treating restenosis, comprising administering to a subject an effective amount of a pharmaceutical composition of claim 24 or 32.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US96/05072

**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER**

IPC(6) :A61K 31/395;38/00

US CL :514/210,13,14,15

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 514/210,13,14,15

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

STN COMPOUNDS AND VARIOUS METHODS OF USE

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	US, A, 5,453,502 (AIKINS ET AL) 26 September 1995. see entire document.	1-44, 46, 48
Y	HETEROCYCLES, Volume 20, number 12, issued 1983, Kametani et al, "STUDIES ON THE SYNTHESIS OF CARBAPENEM ANTIBIOTICA. STEREOSLECTIVE SYNTHESIS OF POTENTIAL INTERMEDIATE FOR 6-AMIDOCARBAPENEM ANTIBIOTICS" pages 2355-58, see entire document	1-44,46,48

☐ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. ☐ See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:	* T	later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
* A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	* X	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
* E* earlier document published on or after the international filing date	* Y	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
* L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	* A*	document member of the same patent family
* O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means		
* P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed		

Date of the actual completion of the international search

24 JULY 1996

Date of mailing of the international search report

26 AUG 1996

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US  
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks  
Box PCT  
Washington, D.C. 20231

Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230

Authorized officer

RUSSELL TRAVERS

Telephone No. (703) 308-1235



**This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning  
Operations and is not part of the Official Record**

**BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- ☐ BLACK BORDERS
- ☐ IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- ☐ FADED TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☒ BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☐ SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- ☐ COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS
- ☐ GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS
- ☐ LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT
- ☐ REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY
- ☐ OTHER: \_\_\_\_\_

**IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.**

**As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.**